

**2020-1399, -1400**

**UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS  
FOR THE FEDERAL CIRCUIT**

---

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.,  
*Appellant,*

v.

SG GAMING, INC., f/k/a Bally Gaming, Inc.,  
*Appellee.*

---

On Appeal from United States Patent and Trademark Office, Patent  
Trial and Appeal Board in Nos. CBM2018-00005 and CBM2018-00006

---

**CORRECTED BRIEF OF APPELLANT  
NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.**

---

David E. Boundy  
Cambridge Technology Law LLC  
P.O. Box 590638  
Newton, MA 02459  
DavidBoundyEsq@gmail.com  
(646) 472-9737

Matthew J. Dowd  
Robert J. Scheffel  
Dowd Scheffel PLLC  
1717 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW  
Suite 1025  
Washington, D.C. 20006  
mdowd@dowdscheffel.com  
rscheffel@dowdscheffel.com  
(202) 559-9175

*Counsel for Appellant New Vision  
Gaming & Development, Inc.*

## CERTIFICATE OF INTEREST

Counsel for Appellant certifies the following:

1. The full name of every party or amicus represented by me is:

New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc.

2. The name of the real party in interest represented by me is:

New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc.

3. The parent companies, subsidiaries (except wholly owned subsidiaries), and affiliates that have issued shares to the public, of the parties represented by me are:

None

4. The names of all law firms and the partners or associates that appeared for the party or amicus now represented by me in the trial court or agency or are expected to appear in this court are:

Matthew J. Dowd, Robert J. Scheffel, Dowd Scheffel PLLC  
David E. Boundy, Cambridge Technology Law LLC  
Richard A. Baker, Jr. (patent agent), New England Intellectual  
Property, LLC  
Steven Martin, Altman & Martin

5. The title and number of any case known to counsel to be pending in this or any other court or agency that will directly affect or be directly affected by this court's decision in the pending appeal are:

*New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming Inc., 2:17-cv-01559-APG-BNW (D. Nev.)*

Date: June 30, 2020

*/s/ Matthew J. Dowd*  
Signature of counsel  
Matthew J. Dowd  
*Counsel for Appellant*

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>Page</u>
INTRODUCTION .....	1
STATEMENT OF RELATED CASES .....	3
STATEMENT OF JURISDICTION.....	3
STATEMENT OF THE ISSUES .....	4
STATEMENT OF THE CASE AND FACTUAL BACKGROUND .....	5
I. Procedural Background .....	5
II. Factual Background.....	5
A. John Feola’s Novel Gaming Invention.....	5
B. New Vision and SG/Bally Enter into an Agreement for the Bonus Hand Game.....	8
C. Pursuant to the Forum Selection Clause, New Vision Sues in Nevada District Court to Enforce the Agreement .....	11
D. The PTAB’s Adjudicatory Process, Fee Structure, and Compensation Structure.....	13
1. The Two-Step Process for AIA Reviews.....	13
2. The Substantial Financial Revenue Generated by AIA Reviews .....	14
3. PTAB Organization, Financing, and Compensation.....	18
E. Disregarding the Contractual Forum Selection Clause, SG/Bally Files for CBM Review, and the PTAB Cancels the Patents .....	22
SUMMARY OF THE ARGUMENT.....	25
ARGUMENT.....	28

I. Standard Of Review ..... 28

II. The CBM Decisions Should Be Vacated Because The AIA Institution Process Is Unconstitutional ..... 29

    A. The Due Process Clause Entitles a Party to an Impartial and Disinterested Tribunal ..... 29

    B. “Structural Bias” is Enough to Violate the Due Process Clause ..... 32

    C. The PTAB’s Organization, Decisionmaking Process, Fee Structure, and APJ Compensation Scheme Create a Structural Bias that Violates Due Process ..... 34

        1. PTAB Leadership APJs Mix Administrative and Judicial Functions, Creating an Impermissible Appearance of Bias ..... 35

        2. The APJs Make Institution Decisions in the Face of Revenue Consequences, Performance Reviews, Production Requirements, and Bonus Incentives ..... 39

        3. The APJ’s Lack of Judicial Independence Exacerbates the Structural Bias ..... 44

        4. *Thryv v. Click-to-Call* Increases the Potential for Undue Influence from the Structural Bias ..... 46

        5. The Structural Bias is Similar to That Held Unconstitutional in Other Cases ..... 47

        6. The AIA Review Structure Is Significantly Different From Cases that Have Rejected a Due Process Challenge ..... 51

    D. The PTO Can Fix the Constitutional Problem ..... 56

    E. The Constitutionality Argument is Ripe ..... 57

III. The PTAB’s Disregard Of The Forum Selection Clause Should Be Set Aside Under 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A) ..... 58

    A. The PTAB Abdicated Its Discretionary Authority ..... 58

B. The Possible Conflict Between *Thryv* and the APA..... 63

IV. The Proceeding Should Be Remanded Under *Arthrex* ..... 64

V. The PTAB Erred By Holding The Invention As Not Patent Eligible ..... 66

A. Section 101 Law and the Correct Application of *Alice* ..... 67

B. The PTAB Overlooked the Significant Improvement of the Claimed Invention ..... 69

C. The PTAB Misapplied *In re Smith* and *In re Marco Guldenaar*..... 70

D. The Proposed Amended Claim is Patent Eligible ..... 73

VI. Conclusion ..... 73

ADDENDUM

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

**TABLE OF AUTHORITIES**

	<u>Page(s)</u>
<b>Cases</b>	
<i>ACCO Brands Corp. v. Fellowes, Inc.</i> , 813 F.3d 1361 (Fed. Cir. 2016).....	28
<i>Aetna Life Insurance Co. v Lavoie</i> , 475 U.S. 813 (1986).....	32
<i>Alice Corp. Pty v. CLS Bank International</i> , 573 U.S. 208 (2014).....	<i>passim</i>
<i>Alpha Epsilon Tau Chapter Housing Association v. City of Berkeley</i> , 114 F.3d 840 (9th Cir. 1997).....	34, 37, 51, 56
<i>Apple Inc. v Fintiv, Inc.</i> , IPR2020-00019, Paper 11 (P.T.A.B. Mar. 20, 2020) .....	59, 63
<i>Arthrex Inc. v. Smith &amp; Nephew, Inc.</i> , 941 F.3d 1320 (Fed. Cir. 2019).....	<i>passim</i>
<i>Berkheimer v. HP Inc.</i> , 881 F.3d 1360 (Fed. Cir. 2018).....	29, 68
<i>Brown v. Vance</i> , 637 F.2d 272, 282 (5th Cir. 1981).....	33
<i>buySAFE, Inc. v. Google, Inc.</i> , 765 F.3d 1350 (Fed. Cir. 2014).....	68, 69
<i>Cain v. White</i> , 937 F.3d 446 (5th Cir. 2019).....	42, 49, 50, 51
<i>Califano v. Sanders</i> , 430 U.S. 99 (1977).....	58
<i>Caliste v. Cantrell</i> , 937 F.3d 525 (5th Cir. 2019).....	49, 50, 51

*CardioNet, LLC v. InfoBionic, Inc.*,  
955 F.3d 1358 (Fed. Cir. 2020) ..... 70

*Commonwealth of Northern Mariana Islands v. Kaipat*,  
94 F.3d 574 (9th Cir. 1996)..... 37

*Cooter & Gell v. Hartmarx Corp.*,  
496 U.S. 384 (1990) ..... 59

*Cuozzo Speed Technologies, LLC v. Lee*,  
136 S. Ct. 2131 (2016)..... 58, 60, 64

*Delaware Riverkeeper Network v. FERC*,  
895 F.3d 102 (D.C. Cir. 2018) ..... 53, 54, 55

*DePiero v. City of Macedonia*,  
180 F.3d 770 (6th Cir. 1999)..... 37

*Dickinson v. Zurko*,  
520 U.S. 150, 155 (1999) ..... 28, 64

*Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*,  
767 Fed. App’x 930 (Fed. Cir. 2019)..... 59

*Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*,  
No. 17-CV-07088-EDL,  
2018 WL 1475289 (N.D. Cal. Mar. 26, 2018)..... 60, 61

*Doolin Security Savings Bank, F.S.B. v. FDIC*,  
53 F.3d 1395 (4th Cir. 1995)..... 29, 56

*Dugan v. Ohio*,  
277 U.S. 61 (1928)..... 31

*Enfish, LLC v. Microsoft Corp.*,  
822 F.3d 1327 (Fed. Cir. 2016) ..... 69

*ESIP Series 2, LLC v. Puzhen Life USA, LLC*,  
958 F.3d 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2020) ..... 63

*Esso Standard Oil Co. v. Lopez-Freytes*,  
522 F.3d 136 (1st Cir. 2008) .....*passim*

*Ethicon Endo-Surgery, Inc. v Covidien L.P.*,  
 812 F.3d 1023 (Fed. Cir. 2016) ..... 14, 43

*Gibson v. Berryhill*,  
 411 U.S. 564 (1973) ..... 30, 41

*Hirsh v. Justices of Supreme Court of California*,  
 67 F.3d 708 (9th Cir. 1995)..... 37

*HTC Corp. v. Cellular Communications Equipment, LLC*,  
 877 F.3d 1361 (Fed. Cir. 2017) ..... 28

*Hulu, LLC v. Sound View Innovations, LLC*,  
 Case IPR2018-01039, Paper 29,  
 2019 WL 7000067 (PTAB Dec. 20, 2019) (precedential) ..... 38

*In re Marco Guldenaar Holding B.V.*,  
 911 F.3d 1157 (Fed. Cir. 2018) ..... 70, 72

*In re Smith*,  
 815 F.3d 816 (Fed. Cir. 2016) ..... 70, 71, 72, 73

*Lucia v. S.E.C.*,  
 138 S. Ct. 2044 (2018) ..... 27, 45, 66

*Marshall v. Jerrico, Inc.*,  
 446 U.S. 238 (1980) ..... 55, 56

*Mayo Collaborative Services v. Prometheus Laboratories, Inc.*,  
 566 U.S. 66 (2012) ..... *passim*

*Motor Vehicle Manufactures Association of U.S., Inc. v. State Farm Mututal Automobile Insurance Co.*,  
 463 U.S. 29 (1983) ..... 28, 29

*Patlex Corp. v. Mossinghoff*,  
 771 F.2d 480 (Fed. Cir. 1985) ..... 52, 53

*Rose v. Village of Peninsula*,  
 875 F. Supp. 442 (N.D. Ohio 1995) ..... *passim*

*SAS Institute, Inc. v. Iancu*,  
 138 S. Ct. 1348 (2018)..... 55, 64

*Shaw Industries Group v. Automated Creel Systems*,  
 817 F.3d 1293 (Fed. Cir. 2016)..... 62, 63

*The Bremen v. Zapata Off-Shore Co.*,  
 407 U.S. 1 (1972) ..... 62

*Thryv, Inc. v. Click-to-Call Technologies, LP*,  
 140 S. Ct. 1367 (2020)..... 26, 46, 63, 64

*Trading Technologies International Inc. v. IBG LLC*,  
 921 F.3d 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2019)..... 68

*Tumey v. Ohio*,  
 273 U.S. 510 (1927).....*passim*

*United Church of the Medical Center v. Medical Center Commission*,  
 689 F.2d 693 (7th Cir. 1982)..... 30

*Valley v. Rapides Parish School Board*,  
 118 F.3d 1047 (5th Cir. 1997)..... 43

*Ward v. Village of Monroeville*,  
 409 U.S. 57 (1972).....*passim*

*Withrow v. Larkin*,  
 421 U.S. 35 (1975)..... 43

*Wolkenstein v. Reville*,  
 694 F.2d 35 (2d Cir. 1982) ..... 33

**Statutes**

5 U.S.C. § 559 ..... 63

5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A) .....*passim*

5 U.S.C. § 7513 ..... 44

5 U.S.C. § 7521 .....	44
28 U.S.C. § 1295(a)(4)(A).....	3
35 U.S.C. § 3(c) .....	65
35 U.S.C. § 6 .....	13
35 U.S.C. § 6(a) .....	13
35 U.S.C. § 6(b)(4).....	13
35 U.S.C. § 42 .....	15
35 U.S.C. § 42(c)(2) .....	15, 54
35 U.S.C. § 101 .....	<i>passim</i>
35 U.S.C. § 141(c) .....	3
35 U.S.C. § 311 .....	14, 64
35 U.S.C. § 311(a) .....	15, 16, 53
35 U.S.C. § 318 .....	14
35 U.S.C. § 321 .....	14
35 U.S.C. § 321(a) .....	15, 16, 53
35 U.S.C. § 328 .....	3, 14
35 U.S.C. § 329 .....	3
42 U.S.C. § 717(j) .....	54
42 U.S.C. § 7178(a)(1).....	53
42 U.S.C. § 7178(f) .....	53
Pub. L. No. 108-477, § 801, 118 Stat. 2809 (2004).....	16
Pub. L. No. 112-29, 125 Stat. 284 (2011).....	3, 13

**Rules**

5 C.F.R. Part 351 ..... 44

5 C.F.R. § 930.204(a) ..... 44

5 C.F.R. § 930.206(a)-(b)..... 45

5 C.F.R. § 930.210..... 44

37 C.F.R. § 42.15(a)-(c) ..... 15

37 C.F.R. § 42.71..... 66

**Other Authorities**

*Setting and Adjusting Patent Fees, Final Rule,*  
78 Fed. Reg. 4212 (Jan. 18, 2013) ..... 15

*Setting and Adjusting Patent Fees During Fiscal Year 2017,*  
82 Fed. Reg. 52,780 (Nov. 14, 2017)..... 15

Declaration of John Feola in Support of Plaintiff’s Partial Motion for  
Summary Judgment, *New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v.*  
*Bally Gaming Inc.*, No. 2:17-cv-01559-APG-PAL  
(D. Nev. Mar. 13, 2018) (ECF 28-1) ..... 8

Executive Order 13,843, *Excepting Administrative Law Judges*  
*From the Competitive Service* (July 10, 2018),  
*reprinted* 83 Fed. Reg. 32,755 (July 13, 2018) ..... 45

Gene Quinn, *Structural Bias at the PTAB: No Dissent Desired,*  
IP Watchdog (June 6, 2018) ..... 22

*General Order in Cases Involving Requests for Rehearing*  
*Under Arthrex, Inc. v. Smith & Nephew, Inc.*, 941 F.3d  
1320 (Fed. Cir. 2019),  
2020 WL 2306121 (P.T.A.B. May 1, 2020)..... 65

Glenn J. McLoughlin, *U.S. Patent and Trademark Office*  
*Appropriations Process: A Brief Explanation,*  
CRS Report RS20906 (Aug. 28, 2014)..... 15

Hoa Nguyen, *Making Successful New Table Games for Atlantic City  
Casinos a Challenge*, The Press of Atlantic City (Oct. 20, 2012) ..... 6

Scott McKeown,  
*Judicial Independence & The PTAB* (Dec. 12, 2017) ..... 21, 22

## INTRODUCTION

This appeal identifies a constitutional flaw with the Patent Trial and Appeal Board’s (“PTAB”) structure and process for deciding whether to institute post-grant proceedings under the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act (“AIA”). The overall structure creates impermissible incentives for the PTAB, its leadership, and the individual administrative patent judges (“APJs”). The AIA decisionmaking structure falls squarely within the ambit of *Tumey v. Ohio*, 273 U.S. 510 (1927), and related cases, where courts have held that a “temptation” from “structural bias” can violate the Due Process Clause—even in the absence of any actual bias.

The AIA review process operates under a set of conditions that very well may be unique in the federal government. It is entirely user-fee funded, and the PTO’s budget is effectively based on its fee collections. The PTAB operates as a “business unit” with its own budget responsibilities. About 40% of the approximately \$57 million in annual AIA fee collections depends on granting petitions to institute. The PTAB leadership APJs have dual roles as executive and adjudicator. The APJs making most institution decisions are subjected to performance reviews

and management tools by PTAB leadership, and the APJ's salary and bonus structures incentivize higher "production," which means more institutions. Lastly, APJs lack the judicial independence of Article III judges or even administrative law judges.

This uncommon system creates temptations beyond what is permissible under the Due Process Clause. It is not difficult to see how PTAB leadership APJs face conflicting interests between their adjudicatory responsibilities to decide AIA petitions and their executive responsibilities to manage PTAB finances and revenue. It is also not difficult to see how the average APJ could be tempted—or seen as tempted—to grant borderline petitions, in order to ensure continued workflow, possible bonuses, and robust PTAB fee collections. Indeed, about \$23 million annually rests solely on APJ decisions to grant AIA petitions.

The structural bias ingrained in the AIA decisionmaking process violates due process. It creates the types of "temptations" that courts have repeatedly warned against to ensure that the administrative adjudicatory process is not only fair and impartial but appears fair and impartial. The PTO can fix the current structure, and that makes it all

the more imperative to ensure impartiality in the administrative adjudicatory process.

### **STATEMENT OF RELATED CASES**

Pursuant to Federal Circuit Rule 47.5, there is no prior appeal in or from the PTAB proceedings in this case, in this or any other appellate court. The patents in dispute here are at issue in *New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming Inc.*, No. 2:17-cv-01559-APG-BNW (D. Nev.).

### **STATEMENT OF JURISDICTION**

This Court has jurisdiction pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 1295(a)(4)(A), 35 U.S.C. §§ 141(c), 144, and 329 because these appeals arise from final decisions in covered business method (“CBM”) review proceedings. The PTAB had jurisdiction under Pub. L. No. 112–29, § 18(a), 125 Stat. 311, 329-30 (2011) and 35 U.S.C. § 328. The notices of appeal were timely filed on January 18, 2020, after the PTAB’s decisions denying rehearing on November 20, 2019. These appeals are from final agency decisions that dispose of all parties’ claims.

## STATEMENT OF THE ISSUES

1. Whether the unusual structure for instituting and funding AIA post-grant reviews violates the Due Process Clause in view of *Tumey v. Ohio*, 273 U.S. 510 (1927), and its progeny, which establish “structural bias” as a violation of due process.

2. Whether the Patent Trial and Appeal Board (“PTAB”) decisions should be set aside under 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A) because the PTAB (a) did not consider, as part of its discretion to deny institution, a contractual obligation that precluded an AIA post-grant challenge, and (b) placed the burden on the patent owner to identify a “contractual estoppel defense.”

3. Whether the PTAB’s decisions should be vacated and remanded because the PTAB panel that decided the cases was unconstitutional under the Appointments Clause.

4. Whether the PTAB erred in holding the claims as directed to patent-ineligible subject matter under 35 U.S.C. § 101.

## **STATEMENT OF THE CASE AND FACTUAL BACKGROUND**

### **I. Procedural Background**

The decisions on appeal arise in two CBM reviews. On December 15, 2017, SG/Bally filed two CBM petitions against U.S. Patent Nos. 7,451,987 and 7,325,806, challenging all twelve claims of each patent. Appx0402-0440; Appx2002-2039. On June 22, 2018, the PTAB instituted CBM reviews on all patent claims. Appx0086-0120; Appx0206-0240. The PTAB issued final written decisions on June 19, 2019, cancelling all claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Appx0001-0067; Appx0121-0187. The PTAB later denied rehearing on November 20, 2019. Appx0068-0085; Appx0188-0205.<sup>1</sup>

### **II. Factual Background**

#### **A. John Feola's Novel Gaming Invention**

John Feola, the inventor, has a long history of inventing new games for the gaming industry. Appx1165-1167. Mr. Feola has designed numerous games for industry-leading casinos in Nevada and New Jersey,

---

<sup>1</sup> The same patents and parties are involved in a civil action in the District of Nevada. This case is currently stayed. *See infra*.

as well as for various state lotteries.<sup>2</sup> Despite never graduating high school, Mr. Feola has been awarded about thirty issued patents for his gaming inventions, and he created New Vision Gaming (“New Vision”) as the company to license his inventions. Appx1165-1167.

Two of his patents—the ’806 and ’987 patents—at issue here are directed to a novel bonus feature for a card game. Appx0444-0451; Appx2043-2050. The inventive concept creates a bonus hand by combining cards from two or more hands in a base game, which can be poker or blackjack. Appx0450-0451; Appx2049. Players play the game under either standard rules or modified rules. Appx0448; Appx0449. The card used from the players’ hands to form the bonus hand may be selected by rule (such as the first-dealt card, the second-dealt card, or the last-dealt card), or may be selected as chosen by the player. Appx0449. In the example of Figure 2, one player contributes the five of spades, one player contributes the three of diamonds, and another contributes the four of hearts. Appx0449. Bonus hands that combine cards from a single

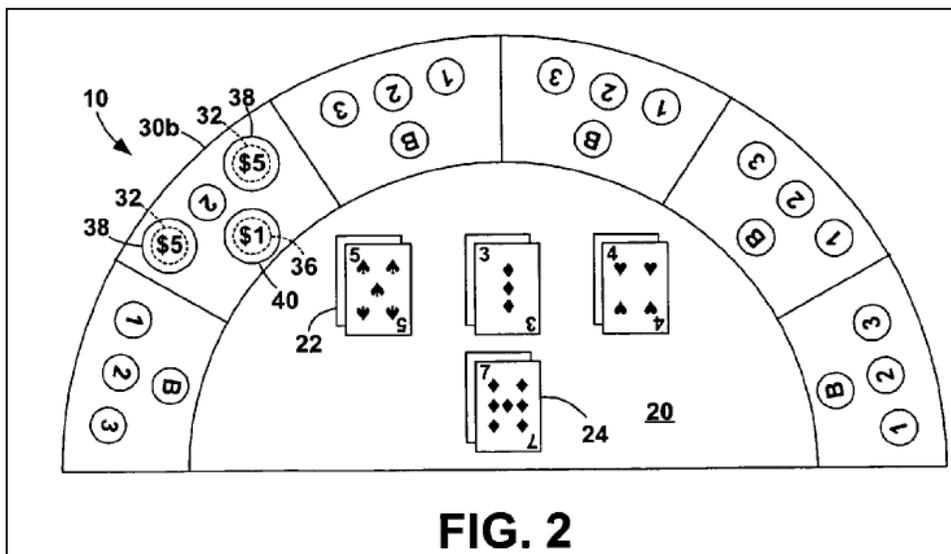
---

<sup>2</sup> Hoa Nguyen, *Making Successful New Table Games for Atlantic City Casinos a Challenge*, The Press of Atlantic City (Oct. 20, 2012), [https://www.pressofatlanticcity.com/news/breaking/making-successful-new-table-games-for-atlantic-city-casinos-a-challenge/article\\_ea5e8028-1b23-11e2-9a57-0019bb2963f4.html](https://www.pressofatlanticcity.com/news/breaking/making-successful-new-table-games-for-atlantic-city-casinos-a-challenge/article_ea5e8028-1b23-11e2-9a57-0019bb2963f4.html).

player and the dealer are known, Appx0448, but a bonus hand made up of cards from a plurality of independent hands is a novel feature. Appx0450.

The invention has several advantages. Because the bonus hand can have more cards than an individual player's hand, uncommon card combinations become available, which in turn enables a payout schedule with higher potential payouts, unavailable in the normal rules of poker, blackjack, or other base game. Appx1316-1317.

The players can also bet on the bonus hand. Appx0449. As shown in Figure 2 below, a player bets \$5 on hands 1 and 3 and \$1 on the bonus hand B. The bonus hand may be scored by whatever method the casino



chooses. Appx0450 5:3-38. The bonus hand may be scored as a poker

hand with a high payout for a royal flush and a low payout for a pair or may be scored for the sum of the card values. Appx0450. Depending on the cards in the bonus hand and the scoring used, winnings are paid to the players. *Id.*

Claim 1 of the '987 patent reads:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:

(a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;

(b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;

(c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;

(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and

(e) paying said winning player a payout.

Appx2049.

**B. New Vision and SG/Bally Enter into an Agreement for the Bonus Hand Game**

After the patents issued, New Vision offered the bonus hand invention to Roger Snow, SG/Bally's director of table games.<sup>3</sup> Mr. Feola

---

<sup>3</sup> Declaration of John Feola in Support of Plaintiff's Partial Motion for Summary Judgment, *New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v. Bally*

recalled that SG/Bally's Mr. Snow not only liked the game's bonus feature but also said "Bally would love to have a patent on the game so that they could better market the game." *Id.*

In June 2014, SG/Bally signed an agreement with New Vision, under which SG/Bally agreed to pay royalties for its use of the game's bonus feature. Appx1096-1111. Recognizing the natural connection between the gaming industry and Nevada, the parties agreed that any dispute about the agreement and/or the patents would be resolved in Nevada courts. Appx1102 ¶ 13(f). The agreement states: "[T]he parties agree and consent to the exclusive jurisdiction of an appropriate state or federal court located within the State of Nevada, Clark County, to resolve any such dispute." *Id.*<sup>4</sup>

Additionally, the agreement's royalty structure is unconventional in three respects. First, royalties flow from the use of a specific game, not from practicing the patents. Appx1098-1099 ¶ 5. No clause of the

---

*Gaming Inc.*, No. 2:17-cv-01559-APG-PAL, ¶ 6 (D. Nev. Mar. 13, 2018) (ECF 28-1).

<sup>4</sup> The agreement also has several unconventional terms that are not directly at issue on appeal and that the parties agree are confidential. Appx1096-1104.

agreement conditions any obligation on infringement, including the obligation to pay royalties. *Id.* SG/Bally agreed to pay to use Mr. Feola's game, independent of whether that game infringes or not, and even if the agreement itself were terminated. Appx1098 ¶ 5(a), ¶ 13(a). Conversely, the use of other games that might practice the patents owes no royalty. Appx1098 ¶ 5.

Second, New Vision committed to assist SG/Bally in maintaining compliance with the "highly regulated nature" of the gaming business. Appx1101 ¶ 13(b). Breach of this commitment was grounds for SG/Bally to terminate royalty payments. Appx1098 ¶ 5. Third, royalties are to continue one year past any final adjudication of invalidity. Appx1098 ¶ 4(e). A severability/salvage clause obligates the parties to effectuate those economic terms. Appx1102 ¶ 13(g).

New Vision and SG/Bally also agreed to specific conditions for termination, Appx1097-0098 ¶ 4, and separate conditions for royalty termination, Appx1098 ¶¶ 4(e), 5(a). Either party could terminate for cause or for acts that could compromise the other's gaming license. *Id.* ¶ 4(c). There is no provision for terminating based on noninfringement,

and any remedy for invalidity is handled in a specific clause. Appx1098 ¶ 4(e).

**C. Pursuant to the Forum Selection Clause, New Vision Sues in Nevada District Court to Enforce the Agreement**

Despite the successful agreement, SG/Bally informed New Vision on February 8, 2017 that it would not be renewed “upon the expiration of the Initial Term,” which did not expire until June 3, 2017. Appx0494. SG/Bally did not commit to stop using New Vision’s games or to continue paying usage fees for use after termination. Appx0494. SG/Bally’s February 2017 letter does not allege that the patents are invalid. *Id.*

Counsel for New Vision responded on June 7, 2017, by reminding SG/Bally that the agreement called for payments to continue so long as SG/Bally continued to use the game, even if the agreement was terminated. Appx0496.<sup>5</sup> The letter requested an accounting and estimated that SG/Bally owed about \$500,000. Appx0495. New Vision included a copy of a district court complaint filed (but not yet served) for

---

<sup>5</sup> New Vision’s June 2017 letter observed: “Bally’s obligation to make quarterly payments is simply not dependent upon the use or applicability of the patents but is based upon time and use of specific games. Again, none of the contractual conditions that would allow Bally to stop payment have occurred.” Appx0496.

contract damages and invited SG/Bally to discuss possible settlement. Appx0496.

SG/Bally responded on August 3, 2017—several months after the three-month window for contract termination. Appx0506. SG/Bally argued that the patents were invalid and refused to pay what was owed or discuss settlement. *Id.* SG/Bally promised only to vigorously defend and to seek attorney fees. *Id.*

New Vision then served its district court complaint, consistent with the parties' agreement to have disputes resolved in Nevada court. Appx0764-0771. New Vision alleged that SG/Bally breached by not paying royalties due without a legally justifiable reason, and that nonpayment violated the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing under Nevada state law. Appx0766-0768. SG/Bally's answer raised contract defenses and asserted patent invalidity counterclaims. Appx0746-0762.

New Vision moved to dismiss and for partial summary judgment. Appx0772-0784; Appx0952-0976. The district court granted New Vision's motion in part, dismissing three of SG/Bally's contract defenses and rejecting SG/Bally's request for a refund of paid royalties. Order, *New*

*Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming Inc.*, No. 2:17-cv-01559-APG-PAL (D. Nev. Mar. 13, 2018) (ECF 40).

SG/Bally then filed the CBM petitions (in contravention of the agreement's forum selection clause). Appx0402-0443; Appx2002-2039. After unsuccessfully opposing the petitions, New Vision moved to stay that patent aspect of the district court case to avoid having to litigate the patent issue in two different proceedings. *New Vision* (D. Nev. Jul. 14, 2018) (ECF 49). The court stayed the entire case. (D. Nev. Nov. 26, 2018) (ECF 82). The Nevada case remains stayed.

#### **D. The PTAB's Adjudicatory Process, Fee Structure, and Compensation Structure**

Before getting to the CBM reviews, an overview of the PTAB and its decisionmaking and revenue-generating procedures is necessary as relevant to the due process challenge.

##### **1. The Two-Step Process for AIA Reviews**

The AIA fundamentally altered the process for challenging patents. Pub. L. No. 112-29, 125 Stat. 284 (2011). The PTAB adjudicates the new post-grant AIA challenges. 35 U.S.C. § 6(a), (b)(4). The PTAB comprises the "Director, the Deputy Director, the Commissioner for Patents, the

Commissioner for Trademarks, and the administrative patent judges.”  
*Id.* § 6.

Under the AIA, a petitioner files a petition, and the PTAB first decides whether to grant the petition and institute review. 35 U.S.C. §§ 311, 321. Although the Director has the statutory authority to decide institution, the Director has delegated that authority to the PTAB. *See generally Ethicon Endo-Surgery, Inc. v. Covidien LP*, 812 F.3d 1023 (Fed. Cir. 2016). If institution is granted, the review continues to “trial phase,” and the PTAB (not the Director) makes the final decision on patentability. 35 U.S.C. §§ 318, 328.

In the view of some, AIA review has been an unqualified success. As of April 2020, over 11,401 AIA petitions have been filed—an average of more than 1,300 per year since September 2012. Appx4604. Overall, 62% of completed post-grant challenges have cancelled all patent claims, and 80% have invalidated one or more claims. Appx4611. Institution rates have ranged from 55% to 87%. Appx4607.

## **2. The Substantial Financial Revenue Generated by AIA Reviews**

The specific funding scheme for AIA post-grant proceedings is unlike most adjudicatory processes in other federal agencies. The PTO

requires the payment of two fees upon filing. One fee covers the PTAB's costs for the institution phase to decide the petition; the second fee covers costs for the trial phase, if the PTAB grants the petition. 37 C.F.R. § 42.15(a)-(c). If the petition is denied, the trial phase fee can be returned. *Setting and Adjusting Patent Fees, Final Rule*, 78 Fed. Reg. 4212, 4233-34 (Jan. 18, 2013). Under this structure, the PTAB generates more revenue when it grants AIA petitions.

The PTO also has substantial autonomy over its budget and revenue. The PTO is a fee-funded agency that “operates like a business.” *Setting and Adjusting Patent Fees During Fiscal Year 2017*, 82 Fed. Reg. 52,780, 52,780 (Nov. 14, 2017). It is generally appropriated the full amount of revenue generated from AIA proceedings. Plus, AIA § 22 established a Patent and Trademark Fee Reserve Fund (“Reserve Fund”) in the Treasury. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 42. The Reserve Fund is for fees “collected in excess of the appropriated amount.” *Id.* § 42(c)(2). While the PTO is funded by the congressional appropriations process, the fees in the Reserve Fund are available only to the PTO. *Id.*<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> *See generally* Glenn J. McLoughlin, *U.S. Patent and Trademark Office Appropriations Process: A Brief Explanation*, CRS Report RS20906 (Aug. 28, 2014). Appx4387-4393.

Unlike many other agencies, the PTO sets its own fees, without congressional approval. *See* 35 U.S.C. §§ 311(a), 321(a). The PTO sets AIA post-grant proceeding fees at whatever it deems a “reasonable” amount, taking into account “aggregate costs.” 35 U.S.C. §§ 311(a), 321(a). The PTO’s current authority to set its fees is another significant departure from other agencies and even from past practice, when the PTO generally needed congressional approval for most fee increases. *See, e.g.*, Pub. L. No. 108-477, § 801, 118 Stat. 2809, 2997 (2004).

The PTO sets the AIA fees at a level of its best estimate for cost recovery. 35 U.S.C. § 321(a); Appx4128. The institution and trial phase fees are set to cover the estimated costs of those phases. Appx4259; Appx4127-4128. This permits the PTAB to operate within its budget and to fund APJ salaries, bonuses, and the other operating expenses. For example, for 2021, the PTO proposes to charge a fee of \$20,000 plus \$475 per claim over 20 claims based on the estimated 2018 cost of a CBM institution phase as \$21,465. Appx4128. For the trial phase, the estimated cost is \$29,842, and the proposed fee is \$27,500 plus \$1,050 per claim over 20. Appx4128.

The PTO also estimates future PTAB workflow in connection with fee and budget setting. Appx4315-4318; Appx4319-4350.<sup>7</sup> For fiscal year 2021, the PTAB's total projected fee collections (ex parte appeals and AIA proceedings) are about \$94 million. Appx4338 (cell R326). Of that total, about \$57 million will be fees for AIA post-grant proceedings. Appx4335-4338.<sup>8</sup> Projected institution-phase fees are about \$34 million, and projected trial-phase fees are about \$23 million. Appx4335-4336. Thus, of all AIA-related fees, about 60% are for the institution phase, and 40% are for the post-institution trial phase. See Appx4335-4336. In other words, about 40% of the AIA-related fees are collected only if the PTAB

---

<sup>7</sup> Appx4319-4350 is the PTO's spreadsheet that provides, among other information, estimated fee collections, broken down by PTO business units. See Aggregate Revenue Tables, [https://www.uspto.gov/sites/default/files/documents/Agg\\_Rev\\_Tables\\_July2019.xlsx](https://www.uspto.gov/sites/default/files/documents/Agg_Rev_Tables_July2019.xlsx). Using the second-row column labels, the sum of cells R291:R326 provide estimated fee collections for 2021 for all PTAB collections. Appx4335-4338. AIA-related total fee collections for FY2021 are provided by summing cells R296:R307, R309, and R310. Estimates for AIA-related fees for other years are calculated accordingly. For instance, FY2020 estimated AIA-related collections are the sum of cells O296:O307, O309, and O310 (FY2020), and FY2022 estimates are the sum of cells S296:S307, S309, and S310. *Id.*

<sup>8</sup> Estimated FY2021 AIA petition request fees (institution phase) are calculated by summing R296, R299, R302, R305, and R310. Estimated FY2021 post-institution fees (trial phase) are the sum of R297, R298, R300, R301, R303, R304, R306, and R307.

grants institution of AIA petitions. This amounts to about 24% of the PTAB's collections being dependent on instituting petitions.

### **3. PTAB Organization, Financing, and Compensation**

From 2011 to 2020, the PTAB grew from about 60 APJs to about 260 to handle the new AIA reviews. Appx3881-3887. The APJs are organized hierarchically, all supervised by the Chief APJ. Appx4614-4616. The Chief APJ and the Deputy Chief APJ are the PTAB's "senior level executive management" and make up the Office of the Chief Judge. Appx4614. Below them are the Vice Chief APJs, who manage PTAB divisions consisting of judges and patent attorneys. Appx4615. Each division has six sections of APJs, and a "Lead APJ" manages each section of "line APJs." Appx4615.<sup>9</sup>

The Chief APJ, the Deputy Chief APJ, and the Vice Chief APJs have executive/administrative responsibilities, on the one hand, and judicial responsibilities, on the other. *See* Appx4004-4027 (Chief APJ); Appx4028-4033 (Deputy Chief APJ); Appx4106-4113 (Vice Chief APJ). The Chief APJ "perform[s] Business Unit Head functions" of the PTAB,

---

<sup>9</sup> For clarity, we use the term "line APJ" to distinguish the base APJ from other titles for APJs.

which includes “execut[ing] the operating budget; prepar[ing] budget requests with justifications; and manag[ing] resources.” Appx4004-4005; Appx3995-3996.<sup>10</sup> The Deputy Chief APJ and the Vice Chief APJs are similarly involved in the financial management of the PTAB business unit. Appx4030-4031; Appx4108-4109.

While overseeing the PTAB’s finances, PTAB leadership also makes decisions on the merits of AIA proceedings. *See* Appx3903. The Chief APJ and others will issue directives, such as the standard operating procedures (“SOPs”). Appx4351-4386. The PTAB leadership can participate on a Precedential Opinion Panel, which is “used to establish binding agency authority.” Appx4375-4378.

Sometimes seen as equivalent to federal judges, APJs operate under fundamentally different employment rules, which PTAB leadership uses to incentivize the APJs. *See* Appx3818-3838; Appx3888-3901. An APJ is rated by supervisors. *E.g.*, Appx4036-4063. Lead and line APJs receive an overall “Performance Rating” as part of the “Classification and Performance Management Record.” Appx3818-3859;

---

<sup>10</sup> The USPTO is organized as “business units,” and the PTAB is a separate “business unit.” *See* Appx4406; Appx4484.

Appx4036-4063; Appx4074-4102. The APJ is rated on a scale of 100 to 500. *E.g.*, Appx4099 (“Total Score”). The numerical rating is the sum of four “Performance Elements,” each of which is a numerical rating. *Id.* One Performance Element is “Production,” which is based on the number of “decisional units” an APJ produces. Appx3822-3823.<sup>11</sup> Each Performance Element independently and generally limits the APJ’s final “Performance Rating” because all four Performance Elements are “critical.” *See, e.g.*, Appx3835 (noting that “if any critical element is less than fully successful[,] the rating can be no higher than the lowest critical element rating”).

For example, line and Lead APJs must earn 84 and 59 decisional units, respectively, to be eligible for the “Fully Successful” rating. Appx3823; Appx3935. If a line APJ produces only 83 decisional units, he/she cannot, according to PTO documents, be rated as “Fully Successful.” *See* Appx3823; Appx3945; Appx3971; Appx3975; Appx4060; Appx4063; Appx4066; Appx4099; Appx4102. Indeed, APJs are instructed

---

<sup>11</sup> A “decisional unit” equates to an action such as writing a decision or order in an AIA proceeding. *See* Appx3823; Appx4043-4046; Appx4081-4084.

to “normally seek efficiency gains and utilize available resources to enhance annual production.” Appx3814.

Unlike a district court judge, an APJ can receive higher compensation based on his or her rating. Appx3881-3887. The APJ can receive a bonus of \$4,000 to \$10,000. Appx3881. The APJ’s salary can be increased, up to five percent, depending on the APJ’s numerical rating and final Performance Rating, Appx3881, which necessarily turns on the APJ’s production of “decisional units.”

Also unlike a federal judge, an APJ is discouraged from writing a concurrence or dissent. *See* Appx3813. Rather than automatically receiving credit for a concurrence or dissent, the APJ must ask permission from a Vice Chief APJ to receive any credit for that work. *Id.* (“Concurrences, dissents, and remands are not normally efficient mechanisms for securing the ‘just, speedy, and inexpensive’ resolution of an appeal before the Board.”). This unusual policy may explain the “surprisingly” few concurrences and dissents. *See* Scott McKeown, *Judicial Independence & The PTAB* (Dec. 12, 2017) (noting the “it is

somewhat surprising that 98% of PTAB merit-based decisions are unanimous”).<sup>12</sup>

Importantly, APJs are not administrative law judges (“ALJs”). The APJ-versus-ALJ distinction has meaningful consequences because, as explained below, APJs are not afforded the legal protections that ensure that ALJs are not unduly influenced by political or other non-merit-based factors, including structural pecuniary incentives. *See infra*. The AIA has thus created one of the largest bodies of non-ALJ agency employees who were intended to supplant decisionmaking by Article III judges.

**E. Disregarding the Contractual Forum Selection Clause, SG/Bally Files for CBM Review, and the PTAB Cancels the Patents**

Turning back to New Vision’s patents, while the district court contract dispute was pending, SG/Bally filed CBM petitions to cancel the patent claims, contrary to the agreement to resolve disputes in Nevada court. Appx0402-0440; Appx2002-2039. SG/Bally’s only ground in the CBMs was that all patent claims were ineligible under 35 U.S.C. § 101.

---

<sup>12</sup> <https://www.patentspostgrant.com/judicial-independence-ptab/#more-12559>. *See also* Gene Quinn, *Structural Bias at the PTAB: No Dissent Desired*, IP Watchdog (June 6, 2018), <https://www.ipwatchdog.com/2018/06/06/structural-bias-ptab-no-dissent-desired/id=94507/>.

New Vision opposed institution on several grounds, including that the forum selection clause of its agreement with SG/Bally was a reason to deny institution. Appx0740-0742; Appx1070-1073. In New Vision's view, the parties' forum selection agreement contractually prohibited SG/Bally from filing the CBM petitions. Appx0742; Appx1071.

Nevertheless, the PTAB instituted, notwithstanding the parties' Nevada forum selection clause. Appx0086-0120; Appx0206-0240. The PTAB ruled that New Vision had not met its burden of identifying "a contractual bar/estoppel defense against the institution" of the CBM review. Appx0093-0096. The PTAB also concluded that it was more likely than not that the patent claims are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a game. Appx0112-0115. The PTAB did not discuss the gaming invention's key aspect—forming the bonus hand from a plurality of hands—but it nonetheless stated that the remaining limitations of the claims were insufficient to integrate an "application" or add an "inventive concept." Appx0116-0118.

New Vision filed a motion to amend the claims. Appx1126-1135. The amendment added hardware-oriented language such as "providing a

video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed.” Appx1130. The PTAB denied the motion to amend. Appx0167-0186.

In its final written decisions, the PTAB declined to reconsider its institution decision. Appx0006-0011; Appx0126-0131. The PTAB reiterated its position that the burden was on New Vision to identify a “contractual estoppel defense.” Appx0006-0008. The PTAB never stated whether it was exercising discretion. *Id.*

The PTAB held that all claims of the ’987 and ’806 patents were unpatentable “abstract ideas” under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Appx0022-0046; Appx0143-0166. To identify an “abstract idea” for *Alice* Step 1, the PTAB equated the game rules to the “rules for conducting a wagering game” of *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Appx0022-0031. The PTAB then looked at the other claim limitations and found them insufficient to escape the “abstract” label. Appx0032-0037; Appx0039-0046. The proposed claim amendments were likewise held unpatentable. Appx0052-0065; Appx0167-0186.

New Vision requested rehearing, Appx1938-1954, which was denied. Appx0068-0085; Appx0188-0205. This appeal follows.

## SUMMARY OF THE ARGUMENT

Due process requires an impartial and disinterested tribunal. The inherent tie between the PTAB's institution decisions of AIA reviews and the substantial revenue generated by those decisions—which account for about 40% of the PTAB's trial proceedings budget—has created a structural bias unlike any other in the federal executive branch. PTAB executives and APJs impermissibly mix administrative and judicial functions that create, at a minimum, an appearance of bias. Post-institution fees pay for APJ salary increases, and the same APJs make the decisions to grant institution and thus generate that revenue for the PTAB. Without continual institutions to cancel patents, the PTAB's budget will diminish, with likely adverse employment consequences on the APJs.

The structural bias is magnified by an APJ's lack of judicial independence. APJs are subject to performance reviews by superiors, including other APJs as well as other PTO officials. Those performance reviews, which depend in part on productivity, help determine the salaries and possible bonuses earned by the APJ. This situation is completely unlike an Article III judge or an ALJ, who cannot receive

bonuses, and the situation further contributes to the impermissible structural bias inherent in the AIA institution decisionmaking process.

The strong institutional bias for generating revenue for the PTAB, along with the financial incentive biases imposed on APJs from bonuses and salary raises, creates a perceived structural bias that exceeds any permissible arrangement under the Due Process Clause. Indeed, these unique features of the AIA post-grant review process—a bipartite payment scheme, APJs incentivized by production and bonus schemes, and an essentially self-funded adjudicatory board—are features that combine to create the structural bias the Supreme Court and appellate courts have repeatedly warned against.

The Supreme Court’s recent decision in *Thryv, Inc. v. Click-to-Call Technologies, LP*, 140 S. Ct. 1367 (2020), magnifies the structural appearance of bias. *Thryv* insulates many, if not most, institution decisions from any meaningful review by this Court.

Second, the decision should be vacated because the PTAB abdicated its obligation to exercise its discretionary authority in the face of SG/Bally’s contractual obligation to not bring a PTAB challenge. The PTAB improperly placed the burden on New Vision to identify a

“contractual estoppel defense.” No such bright-line rule precluded the PTAB from considering, as a matter of discretion, whether the CBM petitions should have been denied pursuant to the contractual obligation that all disputes over the agreement are to be resolved in a Nevada court.

Third, at a minimum, the PTAB decision should be vacated and remanded in view of *Arthrex*. The PTAB panel that decided the CBMs was unconstitutionally appointed. Under *Arthrex* and *Lucia*, a new decision by a new panel of APJs is required.

Fourth, if the Court reaches the patent-eligibility issue, it should reverse. The claimed gaming invention is innovative and thus not abstract under a proper *Alice* analysis. The novel step (c)—“forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands”—is an innovative advance in the gaming industry, used in major casinos throughout the country. Under *Alice*, that type of innovation should be enough to pass the low bar of patent eligibility. At the very least, the PTAB erred in failing to set forth the findings required by the APA “substantial evidence” standard on this claim feature.

## ARGUMENT

### I. Standard Of Review

When a party raises a due process challenge contending a structural bias, the party must show that the decisionmaking process creates “a possible temptation to the average man as judge” such that the adjudicator would “not hold the balance nice, clear and true.” *Tumey v. Ohio*, 273 U.S. 510, 532 (1927); *Ward v. Village of Monroeville*, 409 U.S. 57, 60 (1972).

This Court “review[s] Board decisions in accordance with the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. § 706(2).” *HTC Corp. v. Cellular Commc’ns Equip., LLC*, 877 F.3d 1361, 1367 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (citing *Dickinson v. Zurko*, 527 U.S. 150, 152 (1999)). Under the APA, this Court reviews the PTAB’s legal conclusions de novo and its factual findings for substantial evidence. *ACCO Brands Corp. v. Fellowes, Inc.*, 813 F.3d 1361, 1365 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

A reviewing court must set aside any agency action that is arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law. 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A). An agency must also “cogently explain why it has exercised its discretion in a given manner.” *Motor*

*Vehicle Mfrs. Ass'n of U.S., Inc. v. State Farm Mut. Auto. Ins. Co.*, 463 U.S. 29, 48 (1983).

Eligibility under § 101 is an issue of law with underlying issues of fact. *Berkheimer v. HP Inc.*, 881 F.3d 1360, 1368 (Fed. Cir. 2018).

## **II. The CBM Decisions Should Be Vacated Because The AIA Institution Process Is Unconstitutional**

### **A. The Due Process Clause Entitles a Party to an Impartial and Disinterested Tribunal**

The Due Process Clause prohibits procedures that “offer a possible temptation to the average man as a judge.” *Tumey v. Ohio*, 273 U.S. 510, 532 (1927). “The Supreme Court has jealously protected the due process requirement of impartiality when the decisionmakers stood to gain substantial, personal pecuniary benefits from their adjudicative decisions.” *Doolin Security Savings Bank, F.S.B. v. FDIC*, 53 F.3d 1395, 1406 (4th Cir. 1995).

A procedure creates this unconstitutional temptation if the decisionmaker has a “direct, personal, substantial pecuniary interest” in the proceeding’s outcome. *Tumey*, 273 U.S. at 523. Unconstitutional bias also exists where a decisionmaker with administrative or executive

responsibilities has a sufficiently “strong” “motive” to rule in a way that would aid the institution. *Id.* at 533; *see also Ward*, 409 U.S. at 60.

Unconstitutional bias exists in at least two forms. First, a decisionmaker’s direct pecuniary or other personal interest in a proceeding’s outcome can violate due process. *See, e.g., Gibson v. Berryhill*, 411 U.S. 564, 578 (1973) (revocation of licenses by the optometry board would “possibly redound to the personal benefit of members” of the board); *Tumey*, 273 U.S. at 520. Second, an institutional bias in procedures can create an impermissibly strong motive—or appearance of motive—to rule in favor of the organization or its members. *E.g., Tumey*, 273 U.S. at 533-34; *Ward*, 409 U.S. at 60-61; *United Church of the Med. Ctr. v. Med. Ctr. Comm’n*, 689 F.2d 693, 700 (7th Cir. 1982).

Three Supreme Court cases form the general basis for “structural bias” due process claims. In *Tumey v. Ohio*, a mayor could convict someone for unlawful liquor possession in a mayor’s court. 273 U.S. at 516-17. The mayor received more compensation when he convicted and fined the defendant, and the extra compensation came from the criminal fines. *Id.* at 520. The fines also supported the village’s general treasury fund, which the mayor presided over as the village chief executive officer.

*Id.* at 533. This was a due process violation for two reasons. First, the mayor had “a direct, personal, substantial, pecuniary interest” in fining the person, namely the mayor’s bonus pay tied to the convictions. *Id.* at 523. Second, the mayor had a strong “official motive to convict and to graduate the fine to help the financial needs of the village.” *Id.* at 535.

A year later, in *Dugan v. Ohio*, 277 U.S. 61 (1928), official motivations did not create an unconstitutional bias when the mayor, acting as a judge, was paid from a general fund into which the criminal fines he imposed were deposited. *Id.* at 65. This connection between the general fund and his pay was too “remote,” the Court held, to create an unconstitutional temptation. *Id.* The mayor was one of five on the city commission and had an insufficient connection to the general fund or the city’s financial policy to produce too strong a motivation to favor a particular outcome in a case. *See id.*

In 1972, another Ohio mayor’s court was challenged in *Ward v. Village of Monroeville*. The mayor exercised judicial and executive responsibilities and was responsible for the village’s finances. 409 U.S. at 58. The mayor reported to the village council on budgetary matters, but a “major part of village income” came from the fines and fees imposed

by the mayor. *Id.* This arrangement was unconstitutional as a “possible temptation” because “the mayor’s executive responsibilities for village finances may make him partisan to maintain the high level of contribution from the mayor’s court.” *Id.* at 60.

**B. “Structural Bias” is Enough to Violate the Due Process Clause**

With structural bias, the constitutional deficiency lies not with a decisionmaker shown to be biased but with an overall process that creates too strong a motive and unfair temptation for “the average man as a judge.” *Ward*, 409 U.S. at 60. Indeed, “[t]he administrative process ‘requires the appearance of fairness and the absence of a probability of outside influences on the adjudicator; it does not require proof of actual partiality.’” *Hammond v. Baldwin*, 866 F.2d 172, 176 (6th Cir. 1989) (quoting *Utica Packing Co. v. Block*, 781 F.2d 71, 77 (6th Cir. 1986)). Due process “may sometimes bar trial by judges who have no actual bias and who would do their very best to weigh the scales of justice equally between contending parties.” *Aetna Life Ins. Co. v Lavoie*, 475 U.S. 813, 825 (1986).

A major contributing factor to unconstitutional structural bias is the existence of “substantial” institutional funding that is reliant on a

particular outcome. *See Ward*, 409 U.S. at 58 (unconstitutional where fines imposed by judge accounted for between 35% to 50% of the village income); *Rose v. Village of Peninsula*, 875 F. Supp. 442, 450 (N.D. Ohio 1995) (O'Malley, J.) (unconstitutional where fines accounted for over 10% of village's revenue).

Indeed, in both *Tumey* and *Ward*, “the Court put great emphasis on the fact that the revenues generated by the Mayor’s Court were very substantial and vitally important to the village’s fiscal well being.” *Wolkenstein v. Reville*, 694 F.2d 35, 43 (2d Cir. 1982). As Judge Wisdom explained, the Supreme Court in those two cases was “not as interested in the probity of the individual judge or perhaps even, of the great majority of judges,” but was instead concerned with “the inherent defect in the legislative framework arising from the vulnerability of the average man—as the system works in practice and as it appears to defendants and the public.” *Brown v. Vance*, 637 F.2d 272, 282 (5th Cir. 1981).

Another recurring feature of unconstitutional decisionmaking structures is when monetary fines imposed by a decisionmaker flow back to the decisionmaker’s benefit, even if somewhat indirectly. *See, e.g., Esso Standard Oil Co. v. Lopez-Freytes*, 522 F.3d 136 (1st Cir. 2008)

(holding as unconstitutional an account funded by environmental fines over which the environmental agency has spending discretion because, in part, “any fine imposed will flow directly to the [agency’s] budget”).

Another contributing factor to unconstitutional structural bias is the mixing of executive and adjudicatory responsibilities in a single agency decisionmaker. *Alpha Epsilon Tau Chapter Housing Ass’n v. City of Berkeley*, 114 F.3d 840, 847 (9th Cir. 1997) (Justice White, by designation) (“That the Board is both adjudicator of coverage and executor of its finances may be a less than optimal design for due process purposes.”).

**C. The PTAB’s Organization, Decisionmaking Process, Fee Structure, and APJ Compensation Scheme Create a Structural Bias that Violates Due Process**

The AIA review process operates under a set of conditions that very well may be unique in the federal government: (1) 40% of the PTAB’s AIA trial budget comes from fees generated by institution grants; (2) the PTAB leadership APJs have dual roles, as executive to manage PTAB finances and as adjudicator of AIA proceedings; (3) the line and Lead APJs who make most institution decisions are subject to performance reviews by PTAB leadership; (4) an APJ’s salary and bonus plan

incentivizes higher “production,” which leads to more institutions; (5) APJs lack the judicial independence of Article III judges and ALJs; (6) the PTO is user-fee funded, sets its own fees, and receives appropriations generally based on its fee collections; and (7) the PTAB operates as a “business unit” with its own budget responsibilities.

**1. PTAB Leadership APJs Mix Administrative and Judicial Functions, Creating an Impermissible Appearance of Bias**

The mixing of executive and judicial functions in a single agency position is consistently identified as a significant contributor to unconstitutional structural bias. *See Ward*, 409 U.S. at 60; *Rose*, 875 F. Supp. at 453 (identifying the “the combination and level of his or her executive and judicial powers” as an important factor). Here, the PTO impermissibly combines significant executive and judicial responsibilities in PTAB leadership positions that oversee a PTAB budget heavily dependent on institution-generated revenue.

The Chief APJ, Deputy Chief APJ, and Vice Chief APJs each have some responsibility for institution decisions. They provide policy direction and ensure the quality and consistency of AIA decisions. *See* Appx4004-4006 (Chief APJ); Appx4030-32 (Deputy Chief APJ);

Appx4108-4110 (Vice Chief APJ). Their oversight of AIA decisions is necessarily intended to maximize conformity in the institution and final written decisions. Those PTAB leaders are also authorized to participate on PTAB institution panels, and in fact do so on occasion. *See* Appx4351-4374.

At the same time, the leadership APJs have significant responsibilities managing the PTAB's finances as a distinct "business unit" within the PTO. *E.g.*, Appx4005 (Chief APJ: "Manage allocation of budget resources to accommodate business unit needs."). They oversee fiscal planning and expenditures. They make business unit decisions based on the availability of funds. All of these are high-level executive job duties granting the PTAB leadership significant authority over a budget of \$94 million.

The combination of adjudicatory and executive decisionmaking authority is a major red flag under the *Tumey* line of cases. *See Ward*, 409 U.S. at 60; *Esso Standard Oil*, 522 F.3d at 146-47; *Rose*, 875 F. Supp. at 453. It puts PTAB leadership in an untenable dual role of managing the PTAB's finances in a "business-like sense" and deciding AIA petitions solely on the merits.

The internally conflicted judicial/administrative roles of leadership APJs are even more troubling given the institution decision's criticality to such a substantial percentage of the PTAB's finances. Post-institution fees (trial-phase fees) amount to about \$23 million (FY2021). Appx4335-4336. This is about 24% of the PTAB's total budget and about 40% of the PTAB's AIA trial proceedings budget. Appx4335-4338.

With 24%-40% of its budget dependent solely on granting petitions, the PTAB is in the same or worse situation compared to those cases finding an unconstitutional violation. *See Ward*, 409 U.S. at 58 (fines accounted for between 35% to 50% of village income); *Rose*, 875 F. Supp. at 450 (10%); *see also DePiero v. City of Macedonia*, 180 F.3d 770, 780 (6th Cir. 1999) (adopting 10% from *Rose* as "articulate and persuasive").

Conversely, the percentage of the PTAB budget dependent on post-institution fees is much higher than in those cases where due process challenges have fallen short. *See Hirsh v. Justices of Supreme Court of Cal.*, 67 F.3d 708, 713-14 (9th Cir. 1995) (no violation because attorney disciplinary fines amounted to 1% of state bar funds); *Commonwealth of N. Mariana Islands v. Kaipat*, 94 F.3d 574, 581-82 (9th Cir. 1996) (fines used to build courthouse only 5% of budget); *Alpha Epsilon Tau*, 114 F.3d

at 847 (no violation where financial gain tied to board's decisions was only "two to five percent of the entire budget").

PTAB leadership APJs also understand that the PTAB is intended to be self-funded by user fees. *See* Appx4127-4128. This self-funded fiscal approach is consistent with the PTAB's "business unit" designation with respect to the PTO finances and personnel policies. *See* Appx4064-4073; Appx4004. Under the current funding structure, any decrease in institution grants very likely leads to a decrease in revenue for the PTAB as a business unit. *See* Appx4127-4128; Appx4335-4336. The imperative that the PTAB be fee-funded to cover costs further solidifies the direct connection between post-institution fees and PTAB overall budget.

The impermissible mixing of judicial and administrative/executive roles is perhaps at its extreme with the Precedential Opinion Panel. Appx4375-4386. The Precedential Opinion Panel purports to have the authority to designate PTAB decisions as "precedential," thus effectively binding all future PTAB panels. Appx4377; *see also Hulu, LLC v. Sound View Innovations, LLC*, Case IPR2018-01039, Paper 29, 2019 WL 7000067 (PTAB Dec. 20, 2019) (precedential) (Boalick, Chief APJ).

The Chief APJ is a default member of the Precedential Opinion Panel. Appx4378. The Chief APJ has the ability to participate in substantive policy decisionmaking that binds all PTAB panels, all while managing the PTAB's entire budget. This scenario creates similar problems as in the mayor's courts struck down in *Tumey*, *Ward*, and *Rose*.

Other aspects of the impermissible combination of financial management authority and petition-phase decisionmaking responsibility in PTAB leadership positions confirm the structural bias. Ultimately, the PTAB leadership is placed in situations analogous to those struck down as unconstitutional. This alone may be enough to vacate the PTAB's decision in the present case.

**2. The APJs Make Institution Decisions in the Face of Revenue Consequences, Performance Reviews, Production Requirements, and Bonus Incentives**

The line and Lead APJs, who make most institution decisions, also operate under a system that generates incentives to grant institution, regardless of the merits of the petition. In this system, the “average man as judge”—or more aptly “the average person as patent judge”—is exposed to temptations that undermine the appearance of fairness. The APJs decide petitions knowing that denying a petition will adversely

affect the PTAB “business unit” revenue and will likely affect their own financial and employment situation. This situation falls squarely within the ambit of *Tumey* and *Ward*.

Looming over the APJs are performance reviews and associated bonus incentives. *See, e.g.,* Appx3881. Every time an APJ decides to institute, that patent judge understands that his or her production scores will likely improve. *See* Appx4042-4045; Appx3881. The APJ also continues to work on the case through final written decision, which leads to more opportunities to create “decisional units.” That in turn increases the likelihood that the APJ will receive a positive review, possible salary increase, and possible bonus. *See, e.g.,* Appx3881.

The institution decision has an immediate impact on an APJ’s work for the next 12 months. When an APJ votes to grant institution, that APJ is voting to grant himself or herself work on that post-grant proceeding over the next 12 months. *See* Appx4356-4360. When an AIA proceeding is instituted, the APJ also knows that the PTO and PTAB earn the post-institution fee, thus increasing the revenue for the PTAB business unit as a whole.

Although a decision to institute does not absolutely guarantee an economic benefit for the APJ, a guarantee is not necessary. To violate due process, all that is necessary is a reasonable connection between the decision and the pecuniary benefit. *See Gibson v. Berryhill*, 411 U.S. 564, 578 (1973). The *Gibson* Court found unconstitutional a review process whereby an optometry board revoked licenses of other licensed optometrists. The Court understood that the board's revocations would "possibly redound to the personal benefit of members of the Board." *Id.* (emphasis added).

These incentives are also very similar to the impermissible incentives in *Tumey*. There, the mayor's financial compensation increased as he fined more people for alcohol possession. 273 U.S. at 523. Here, the APJs increase their likelihood of bonuses and salary increases through additional "decisional units." *See* Appx3823; Appx3881.

More so, overall PTAB fee collections and funding are linked to the workload via AIA institution grants. Appx4127-4128. An average APJ is exposed to unfair influences due to this known connection between the PTAB's fee collection/budget and the need to generate revenue to cover costs, as the PTO "operates as a business" and the PTAB is a "business

unit.” If the PTAB’s overall workload decreases—through decreased institutions—then the PTAB may very well decrease the PTAB budget and be left with a need for fewer line and Lead APJs.

The institution decision’s possible effect on the individual APJ’s financial situation cannot be overstated. For example, if the institution rate were reduced by 25%, that would equate to a reduction in trial phase work by about 25%. This reduction in APJ workload could very well cause many line APJs to fall short of the 84 decisional units required for the “Fully Successful” rating. *See* Appx4043; *see also* Appx4080-4084. That in turn would diminish the possibility of salary raises and monetary bonuses. *See* Appx3881 (tying pay adjustments to numerical performance ratings, which in turn depends on productivity).

This direct connection between granting institution and securing employment and bonuses is barely distinguishable from other situations where decisionmakers had a direct pecuniary benefit flowing from a particular decision. *Compare Cain v. White*, 937 F.3d 446, 448-49 (5th Cir. 2019), *with* Appx3823; Appx3881.

Additional systemic bias may result as “prejudging bias.” The same three APJs who granted institution will oversee the case during the trial

phase. The APJ's exposure to the case pre-institution—before seeing all of the evidence—exposes the APJs to possible bias. That prejudging bias by itself has been held insufficient to violate due process rights. *Ethicon Endo-Surgery*, 812 F.3d at 1023. But the prejudging arrangement is not without bias. *See Withrow v. Larkin*, 421 U.S. 35, 51 (1975) (“That is not to say that there is nothing to the argument that those who have investigated should not then adjudicate.”); *Valley v. Rapides Parish School Board*, 118 F.3d 1047, 1053 (5th Cir. 1997) (affirming decision that school board members “had reached prehearing commitments on questions of [adjudicative] fact, thus establishing an unconstitutional level of impartiality”). This additional source of bias further warrants a judicial check on the flawed AIA institution process.

Ultimately, when viewed as a whole, the temptation on the average APJ is significant, imposing, and omnipresent throughout the institution decisionmaking. It is unlike that in any other federal agency decisionmaking process, and it does not comport with any court-approved process. The pecuniary incentives are particularly troubling, given Congress's goal of trying to create an efficient alternative to litigation in Article III trial courts.

### **3. The APJ's Lack of Judicial Independence Exacerbates the Structural Bias**

The APJ's lack of judicial independence amplifies the pecuniary and institutional bias. APJs lack significant independence compared to an Article III judge, or even an ALJ.<sup>13</sup> Without any reasonable independence from the agency, the APJs appear beholden to the PTAB business unit to maintain or increase PTAB revenues. The APJ's lack of independence also creates the appearance that the APJ will be too easily influenced to ensure the workflow for continued employment.

In contrast, ALJs have significant independence through statutory and regulatory protections. Agencies have limited ability to discipline or remove ALJs, except for cause. 5 U.S.C. §§ 7513, 7521. ALJs are protected against reduction in force with rights to reassignment, reemployment priority, and to be referred back into OPM's pool of ALJs to be reassigned to other agencies. 5 C.F.R. § 930.210; *see also* 5 C.F.R. Part 351. ALJs do not serve for a set period of time in office. They instead receive "a career appointment . . . exempt from . . . probationary period requirements." 5 C.F.R. § 930.204(a). An agency may not rate job

---

<sup>13</sup> *See generally* Kent Barnett & Russell Wheeler, *Non-ALJ Adjudicators in Federal Agencies: Status, Selection, Oversight, and Removal*, 53 Ga. L. Rev. 1 (2018).

performance or provide any award or incentive to ALJs. 5 C.F.R. § 930.206(a)-(b).<sup>14</sup>

The APJ works in a different environment, lacking the above ALJ protections. *See Arthrex*, 941 F.3d at 1336 (severing § 7513(a)). The stark contrast is perhaps most succinctly captured by the fact that an APJ's yearly performance is reduced to a single number. *See, e.g.*, Appx4060. Furthermore, unlike an ALJ, the APJ is not exempt from probationary period requirements. Appx4043. APJs have to “demonstrate ramped up productivity” during their first year at the PTAB. Appx4043.

In the end, all the above illustrates the significant temptation—and importantly the appearance of temptation—for the APJs to rule in favor of institution for non-merits-based reasons. The perceived temptation may be to earn decisional units or satisfy the APJ's supervisor. The perceived temptation may instead be concerns over reduced employment

---

<sup>14</sup> After *Lucia*, Executive Order 13,843 excepted newly appointed ALJs from non-statutory civil service protection but left in place the protections listed here for ALJs appointed before July 10, 2018. Executive Order 13,843, *Excepting Administrative Law Judges From the Competitive Service* (July 10, 2018), reprinted 83 Fed. Reg. 32,755 (July 13, 2018)

due to decreased PTAB revenues. These structural biases unfairly influence—or create the appearance of influence—on the “average person as patent judge,” particularly after *Arthrex* and the lack of employment protections under Title 5.

**4. *Thryv v. Click-to-Call* Increases the Potential for Undue Influence from the Structural Bias**

The Supreme Court’s recent decision in *Thryv*, 140 S. Ct. at 1367, further warrants correcting the improper structural bias. *Thryv* makes it even more difficult to challenge the PTAB’s institution decisions. By restricting judicial review, *Thryv* heightens the need to ensure impartiality—and perceived impartiality—in the AIA institution decisionmaking process.

After *Thryv*, the “average person as patent judge” will understand that an institution decision will rarely be second-guessed. This will lead the average APJ—whether unintentionally or not—to be less vigilant about guarding against external biases. Without meaningful judicial review, patent owners and petitioners may well think that existing structural biases are the reason for “erroneous” institution decisions. This undermines a basic maxim in due process: “The administrative process requires the appearance of fairness and the absence of a

probability of outside influences on the adjudicator.” *Hammond*, 866 F.2d at 176 (quotation omitted). Restricted judicial review multiplies the risk that even pecuniary motives will strain the “appearance of fairness.”

### **5. The Structural Bias is Similar to That Held Unconstitutional in Other Cases**

The AIA institution process and funding structure are unlike almost any current federal administrative proceeding. Even so, the process and structure create the same threats to impartiality as seen in other cases that were deemed to violate due process under *Tumey*.

The AIA structural bias is similar to, if not worse than, what was at issue in *Esso Standard Oil*, 522 F.3d at 145-48. There, the First Circuit held as unconstitutional an environmental quality review board (“EQB”) that assessed environmental fines. *Id.* at 146-48. The court “concluded that the bias stems from the potential financial benefit to the EQBs budget as a result of an imposed fine.” *Id.* at 146.

The EQB’s three board members enforced Puerto Rico’s environmental statutes and regulations. *Id.* at 146. These salaried board members had no personal pecuniary interest in the fines imposed and collected, but the board exercised control over funds “which are supplied, at least in part, by fines which it imposes.” *Id.* at 147. The court

recognized that, “[a]lthough members of the [Board] may not stand to gain personally . . . a pecuniary interest need not be personal to compromise an adjudicator’s neutrality.” *Id.*

The EQB’s unconstitutional structure is analogous to the PTAB’s structure. The PTAB leadership manages the finances and also participates in substantive decisions. The PTAB leadership APJs’ review process creates a similar scenario for post-institution fees. The AIA fees generated are used to fund the operations of the PTAB, including salaries and bonuses for APJs. *See* § II.C., *supra*.

The First Circuit also struck down the compensation scheme for the hearing examiners, who could be motivated to levy fines “because of the particularities within the pay structure.” 522 F.3d at 147. A similar problem exists with APJs, where performance evaluations and bonuses depend, in significant part, on the number of their “decisional units.” Appx3823; Appx3835 (noting that 35 percent of an APJ’s performance rating depends on “production,” which is measured by “decisional units”). And if an APJ grants a petition, benefits inure based on continued workflow, the increased opportunity for “decisional units,” and more

PTAB revenue. This conforms to the PTAB's instruction to APJs to "utilize available resources to enhance annual production." Appx3814.

Also similar to the bias in the AIA review structure is *Rose v. Village of Peninsula*. There, the district court focused on the substantial percentage (about 11-13%) of the village's revenue tied directly to fines imposed by the mayor, concluding that it fell within "the ambit of *Ward*." 875 F. Supp. at 451. The PTAB situation is more substantial, with 40% of its AIA trial-related fees, and 24% of its overall fees, wholly dependent on granting petitions to institute. See Appx4335-4338.

The Fifth Circuit's decisions in *Cain v. White*, 937 F.3d 446 (5th Cir. 2019), and *Caliste v. Cantrell*, 937 F.3d 525 (5th Cir. 2019), are equally instructive. In *Cain*, criminal fines were deposited into a judicial expense fund. *Id.* at 448-49. The judges had control over the fund and were given \$250,000 per year from the fund to support the salaries for each judge's staff. *Id.* at 449, 454. The Fifth Circuit "agree[d] with the district court that the situation here falls within the ambit of *Ward*," *id.* at 454, noting that, when the collection of the fines and fees decreases, the court would have difficulty with its budgetary needs, *id.* at 449.

In *Caliste*, 20-25% of the court’s judicial expense fund depended on the bail decisions. 937 F.3d at 526. As explained, “the more often the magistrate requires a secured money bond as a condition of release, the more money the court has to cover expenses. And the magistrate is a member of the committee that allocates those funds.” *Id.*

Again, this is not unlike the AIA review structure, where the PTAB leadership APJs have the simultaneous roles of manager of the PTAB’s budget and finances as “business unit” and of adjudicator on the merits of AIA petitions. In the words of *Caliste*, this “dual role . . . creates a direct, personal, and substantial interest in the outcome of decisions that would make the average judge vulnerable to the ‘temptation . . . not to hold the balance nice, clear, and true.’” *Id.* at 532 (quoting *Tumey*, 273 U.S. at 532).

The AIA structure is also analogous because the post-institution fees make their way to the PTAB through the user-fee funded PTO funding structure, the existence of the Reserve Fund of excess fees (for use only by the PTO), and the internal budgeting of the PTAB as a “business unit.” The fees from granting AIA petitions will fund PTAB operations, salaries, and even bonuses, just as in *Cain* and *Caliste*.

In short, the unusual organizational and fee-generating structure of AIA reviews creates a temptation at least as strong in *Esso*, *Rose*, *Cain*, and *Caliste*. New Vision is unaware of any similar decisionmaking scheme whereby the budget of a federal adjudicatory board depends so heavily and so disproportionately on the continued granting of initial petitions—particularly when those petitions are decided by agency employees who will benefit from granting petitions, and by the board management who are responsible for budgeting, hiring, and other executive functions.

**6. The AIA Review Structure Is Significantly Different From Cases that Have Rejected a Due Process Challenge**

While courts have rejected many due process challenges to agency decisionmaking, even those rejections confirm that incentives in the AIA review process create impermissible structural bias. In some of those cases, the constitutional challenge fails for specific reasons. *See, e.g., Alpha Epsilon Tau*, 114 F.3d at 847 (rejecting challenge because financial gain tied to board’s decisions was only “two to five percent of the entire budget”). Even so, these cases are instructive on why the PTAB’s funding and decisionmaking procedures here are unconstitutional.

This Court addressed a due process challenge thirty-five years ago in *Patlex Corp. v. Mossinghoff*, 771 F.2d 480 (Fed. Cir. 1985). There, the inventor of certain aspects of the laser, Gordon Gould, argued that the reexamination process created an inherent financial temptation and violated due process. Gould saw the \$1,200 refund of the reexamination fee as a temptation to grant reexamination. *Id.* at 487. While rejecting the challenge, this Court noted that “there is some merit in some of the concerns expressed by Gould,” thus recognizing that the reexamination process created at least some perceived bias. *Id.*

The Court ultimately rejected the due process challenge but offered little analysis. *Id.* at 487. Importantly, *Patlex* cannot be read as blessing the substantial incentives created by the current AIA review process. There are numerous differences between the reexamination system upheld in *Patlex* and the current AIA review system.

First, at the time, the PTO was largely dependent on annual appropriations from Congress. There was no segregated Reserve Fund for the PTO within the Treasury, as there is now. Under the current system, excess fees placed in the Reserve Fund are for sole use by the PTO. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 42.

Second, at the time, Congress set the PTO fees for reexamination. 771 F.2d at 487. That is, of course, not the case here. The PTO can now raise AIA fees on its own accord. 35 U.S.C. §§ 311(a), 321(a); *see also* Appx4127-4128.

Third, there is no indication in *Patlex* that the PTO employee tasked with reviewing and deciding the reexamination requests were in any way incentivized as the current APJs are. Indeed, there is no suggestion that the PTO employee who reviewed the reexamination request would receive any bonus or had “production” requirements.

The current AIA review structure also differs from the process upheld in *Delaware Riverkeeper Network v. FERC*, 895 F.3d 102 (D.C. Cir. 2018). There, an environmental group challenged the constitutionality of the Federal Energy Regulation Commission’s (“FERC”) structure for approving new gas pipelines. *Id.* at 105. FERC’s mandate required it to issue a certificate of “public convenience and necessity” before any new gas pipelines can be built. *Id.* at 106. FERC was also statutorily required to recover the costs of the certification process by statute. *Id.* (citing 42 U.S.C. § 7178(a)(1)). Those costs are “credited to the general fund of the Treasury.” *Id.* (citing 42 U.S.C. § 7178(f)).

The D.C. Circuit rejected the challenge. Unlike the PTAB structure, FERC has no direct input on the fees it collects. It is completely beholden to the congressional appropriations process for funding. *Id.* at 106 (citing 42 U.S.C. § 717(j)). Whatever control FERC may have over its funding is far less than the PTO, which sets its own fees, and can increase fee collections by instituting more AIA post-grant proceedings, unlike FERC. *See id.* at 112. Nor is there any indication that FERC “operates like a business,” with different business units, as the PTO does.

Indeed, as stated, PTO and PTAB financials are more closely tied to user fees and the AIA fees, respectively, than in years past. Excess fees are deposited into the Reserve Fund, which are available for use only by the PTO. 35 U.S.C. § 42(c)(2).

Nor was there any suggestion that the FERC employees stood to gain in any way when they approved new pipelines. FERC employees did not have salary raises and bonuses dependent on the production of “decisional units.” Based on the opinion, their employment did not rest on the number of pipeline certificates they issued.

Finally, the D.C. Circuit did not identify any concerns about the improper combination of executive and adjudicatory responsibilities in a single decisionmaker. 895 F.3d at 111-12. That combination is a significant concern with the PTAB's leadership APJs.

Similarly, *Marshall v. Jerrico, Inc.*, 446 U.S. 238 (1980), does not save the PTAB process as currently configured. There, the administrators were “akin to that of a prosecutor or civil plaintiff” rather than a judge. *Id.* at 247. That role is decidedly different from an APJ, who is the adjudicator (much like a district court judge) deciding patent rights in a contested litigation. *See Return Mail, Inc. v. U.S. Postal Serv.*, 139 S. Ct. 1853, 1866 (2019) (noting that “the AIA post-issuance review proceedings are adversarial, adjudicatory proceedings”); *SAS Inst. Inc. v. Iancu*, 138 S. Ct. 1348, 1355 (2018) (recognizing inter partes review as a “party-directed, adversarial process”). Moreover, the administrators earned a fixed salary, irrespective of their assessments. 445 U.S. at 245. Again, this is markedly different from the APJs, who can earn salary increases and bonuses based in part on their production of “decisional units.” Appx4043.

Moreover, in *Marshall*, the sums collected were very small, "substantially less" than 1% of the agency's budget over three years. 445 U.S. at 250. That again is far from the PTAB structure, where fees flowing from institution amount to about 40% of the PTAB's AIA-based budget/collections and about 25% of the PTAB's entire budget/collections. Appx4335-4336. Thus, unlike *Marshall*, the PTAB creates a scenario where there is a "realistic possibility" that the institution decisions will be "distorted by the prospect of institutional gain." 445 U.S. at 250.

In the end, those cases rejecting due process challenges only confirm why the AIA process undermines the appearance of impartiality. *Cf. Alpha Epsilon Tau*, 114 F.3d at 847 (9th Cir. 1997) (rejecting gain because financial gain was only "two to five percent of the entire budget"); *Doolin Security Savings Bank*, 53 F.3d at 1406 (rejecting challenge because the party "allege[d] that the entire decisionmaking apparatus of the FDIC is biased").

#### **D. The PTO Can Fix the Constitutional Problem**

The unconstitutionality of the PTAB institution process is a product of PTO regulations and implementation. The Court need not invalidate any statute. A solution does not require this Court to legislate from the

bench. Rather, the PTO on its own accord can fix the problem of impermissible structural bias.

### **E. The Constitutionality Argument is Ripe**

Finally, there is no reasonable dispute that New Vision's constitutional challenge is ripe. Waiver does not apply for the same reasons noted in *Arthrex*, 941 F.3d at 1326-27. The right to an unbiased adjudicator is a "fundamental constitutional safeguard" and implicates "exceptionally important" structural interests. *Id.* The need for the appearance of unbiased adjudicators has a wide-ranging effect on property rights and the nation's economy, and timely resolution is critical for patent owners and patent challengers alike. *Id.*

Neither the panel nor the PTAB as a whole would have adjudicated the constitutionality of its own procedure. *See, e.g., ZTE (USA) Inc. v. Fundamental Innovation Sys. Int'l LLC*, IPR2018-00425 paper 52, slip op. at 29, 2019 WL 2866003 at \*12 (PTAB Jul. 2, 2019). The Supreme Court itself has cautioned that "[c]onstitutional questions obviously are unsuited to resolution in administrative hearing procedures." *Califano v. Sanders*, 430 U.S. 99, 109 (1977).

### **III. The PTAB's Disregard Of The Forum Selection Clause Should Be Set Aside Under 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A)**

If the Court reaches the forum selection issue, the Court should vacate the institution decision because the PTAB so fundamentally failed to exercise its discretion. This is not an instance where the PTAB exercised its discretion and the patent owner disagreed with the discretionary analysis.

Here, the PTAB acted contrary to controlling standards by imposing a bright-line test and placing the burden on the patent owner to identify a so-called “contractual estoppel defense.” The panel here has laid the foundation for unnecessary conflict between federal agencies, on the one hand, and state and federal courts, on the other.

#### **A. The PTAB Abdicated Its Discretionary Authority**

Denial of a petition is a matter committed to the PTO's discretion. *Cuozzo Speed Techs., LLC v. Lee*, 136 S. Ct. 2131, 2140 (2016). That discretion can be based on whether a different proceeding should be the one to resolve the validity of the challenged patent, and factors are to be balanced in the interest of “efficiency [and] fairness.” *Apple Inc. v Fintiv, Inc.*, IPR2020-00019, Paper 11 at 6-7, 2020 WL 2126495, at \*2-\*3 (P.T.A.B. Mar. 20, 2020) (precedential). Furthermore, an agency acts

arbitrarily and capriciously when it applies a wrong legal standard during its assessment of its discretionary authority. 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A); *see also Cooter & Gell v. Hartmarx Corp.*, 496 U.S. 384, 405 (1990) (“A district court would necessarily abuse its discretion if it based its ruling on an erroneous view of the law. . . .”); *United States v. Frazier*, 387 F.3d 1244, 1259 (11th Cir. 2004) (holding that the lower court abused its discretion when applying the wrong legal standard).

Here, the parties’ agreed forum selection clause was a classic factor that the PTAB should have considered as part of its discretionary analysis. The forum selection clause calls for the resolution of this dispute in Nevada. Appx1102. The forum selection clause unambiguously states SG/Bally’s contractual obligation to litigate “any dispute” about the agreement in Nevada courts. *Id.*

The agreement is almost exactly the same type of agreement at issue in *Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*, 767 Fed. App’x 930 (Fed. Cir. 2019) (non-precedential), where this Court upheld an injunction by the district court.<sup>15</sup> The PTAB distinguished *Dodocase* on the basis that

---

<sup>15</sup> New Vision cited the underlying district court case to the PTAB. Appx1071-1073 (citing *Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*, No. 17-cv-07088-EDL, 2018 WL 1475289 (N.D. Cal. Mar. 26, 2018)).

the district court had issued an injunction ordering the petitioner there to cease the PTAB proceeding. Appx0094-0095.

But the PTAB's approach only highlights the legal error that amounts to "arbitrary and capricious" decisionmaking. "Arbitrary and capricious" under 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A) is one of the class of "shenanigans" that allows review and set-aside of a decision to institute. *Cuozzo*, 136 S. Ct. at 2142. Instead of considering the relevant information, the PTAB erroneously imposed the burden on New Vision to identify a contractual estoppel defense that would bar institution. That is not a proper exercise of discretion.

First, the PTAB erred by misstating the issue as the need to identify a "contractual estoppel defense." Instead, the proper legal analysis should have been whether the existence of the forum selection clause was a sufficient reason for the PTAB to exercise its discretion and not institute the CBM review. At no point in the decision does the PTAB weigh this consideration against any other.

For example, the PTAB also could have determined that discretion favored denying the CBMs, so that it would not create a potential conflict with Nevada contract law. *Cf. Dodocase VR*, 2018 WL 1475289, at \*8

(explaining how party breached its contractual obligations by filing an AIA proceeding in contravention of an agreement's forum selection clause). The PTAB alternatively could have said the benefit of reviewing the patent outweighed the consequence of condoning a party's breach of its contractual obligation. Those considerations would have been relevant under a proper discretionary analysis.

The PTAB faulted New Vision for not obtaining an injunction from the district court. But there was no reason why the PTAB could not have simply exercised a discretionary analysis, recognizing that, had New Vision moved for an injunction, the district court would almost certainly have granted it. *Cf. Dodocase VR*, 2018 WL 1475289, at \*13-14. The PTAB's insistence that a party obtain an injunction only creates unnecessary work for the parties and the district court, and it creates the potential for confusion between the PTO and the federal and state courts.

Further, New Vision did in fact identify relevant precedent, contrary to the PTAB's assertion. *Compare* Appx0215 to Appx0741-0742. New Vision cited *The Bremen v. Zapata Off-Shore Co.*, 407 U.S. 1, 10 (1972), which holds that forum selection clauses "are *prima facie* valid and should be enforced unless enforcement is shown by the resisting

party to be ‘unreasonable’ under the circumstances.” Appx0741-0742. The PTAB ignored this precedent, without even a citation, let alone an explanation of why *Bremen* was insufficient to warrant denial of the petition on discretionary grounds. Appx0093-0096.

The PTAB’s hard-lined approach implicitly (and perhaps unknowingly) rejected without explanation the Supreme Court’s reasoning in *Bremen*. By enabling SG/Bally to proceed with the CBMs, the PTAB implicitly rejected *Bremen*’s holding that forum selection clauses “are *prima facie* valid and should be enforced,” absent a showing of unreasonableness.

The PTAB’s approach also arbitrarily conflicts with the PTO’s arguments to this Court. The PTO has argued that it has “complete discretion to deny institution.” *Shaw Indus. Grp. v. Automated Creel Sys.*, 817 F.3d 1293, 1303 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (Reyna, J. concurring). The PTAB has insisted: “We do not even have to state in our institution decisions why we’re choosing not to go forward.” *Id.* As Judge Reyna noted: “The PTO’s claim to unchecked discretionary authority is unprecedented.” *Id.*

In contrast, the PTAB framed the issue as requiring a “contractual estoppel defense” in order to deny the petitions. That view conflicts with the PTAB’s recent precedential decision. *Apple Inc.*, 2020 WL 2126495, at \*2 (holding that, in denying institution, the PTAB may consider any “other circumstances that impact the Board’s exercise of discretion”). The PTAB identified no reason why it was prohibited from exercising discretion to even consider the forum selection clause. Where an agency has discretion, it must exercise it; an agency may not arbitrarily tie its hands to avoid the exercise of that discretion. *Dalton v. United States*, 816 F.2d 971, 975 (4th Cir. 1987).

### **B. The Possible Conflict Between *Thryv* and the APA**

New Vision recognizes the tension between this argument and *Thryv*. One might read *Thryv* as barring almost all judicial review of institution decisions. *Cf. ESIP Series 2, LLC v. Puzhen Life USA, LLC*, 958 F.3d 1378, 1386 (Fed. Cir. 2020). That reading would effectively displace APA judicial review. But displacing the APA requires express congressional action. 5 U.S.C. § 559 (“Subsequent statute may not be held to supersede or modify [the APA] except to the extent that it does so expressly.”); *Zurko*, 520 U.S. at 155. The AIA and *Thryv* are entirely

silent on whether the AIA was intended to displace the APA. 35 U.S.C. §§ 311-329; *Thryv*, 140 S. Ct. at 1370-77.

Other recent Supreme Court decisions explicitly explain that 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A) is still applicable to the PTAB's institution decision. *See SAS Inst.*, 138 S. Ct. at 1359 (citing 5 U.S.C. §§ 706(2)(A), (C) when stating that judicial review is still available for certain "shenanigans"); *Cuozzo*, 136 S. Ct. at 2142 (same).

In the end, the PTAB's complete and unexplained abdication of its discretionary authority amounts to "shenanigans" that this Court should not countenance. *Cf. State Farm*, 463 U.S. at 48 (holding that the agency must also "cogently explain why it has exercised its discretion in a given manner"). The PTAB's institution decision should be vacated.

#### **IV. The Proceeding Should Be Remanded Under *Arthrex***

If the Court disagrees on the preceding arguments, the PTAB's decision should be vacated and remanded pursuant to *Arthrex, Inc. v. Smith & Nephew, Inc.*, 941 F.3d 1320 (Fed. Cir. 2019), and subsequent cases. Remand has been the appropriate course of action in similar circumstances. *See General Order in Cases Involving Requests for Rehearing Under Arthrex, Inc. v. Smith & Nephew, Inc.*, 941 F.3d 1320

(*Fed. Cir. 2019*), 2020 WL 2214225 (PTAB May 4, 2020) (Boalick, Chief APJ) (listing 103 proceedings remanded).

In *Arthrex*, this Court held that APJs are principal officers and must be appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. *Id.* at 1335. “[B]ecause they are not, the current structure of the Board violates the Appointments Clause.” *Id.* To remedy the constitutional violation, this Court severed the applicability of Title 5’s removal provisions as applied to APJs under 35 U.S.C. § 3(c). *Id.* at 1338.

For any case with a final written decision rendered by an unconstitutional panel, the case “must be vacated and remanded,” assuming the party raised the issue on appeal. *Id.* at 1340. On remand, under *Arthrex*, a new panel must be designated to hear the post-grant proceeding. *Id.*

In this case, when the final written decisions issued in June 2019, these APJs were unconstitutional under the *Arthrex* decision. The same was true when New Vision filed its motion for reconsideration on July 17, 2020. Appx1938-1954. Thus, the *Arthrex* holding was not applicable when the parties’ briefing had been fully completed.

Rehearing in November 2019 did not cure the defect. Both *Arthrex* and *Lucia v. S.E.C.*, 138 S. Ct. 2044 (2018), foreclose that argument. When a judge has heard a case and issued a decision on the merits, the judge “cannot be expected to consider the matter as though he had not adjudicated it before.” *Lucia*, 138 S. Ct. at 2055; *Arthrex*, 941 F.3d at 1340. “To cure the constitutional error, another [administrative judge] must hold the new hearing.” *Lucia*, 138 S. Ct. at 2055; *Arthrex*, 941 F.3d at 1340. This is especially true here, where the rehearing was under the PTAB’s narrow “misapprehended or overlooked” scope of review. 37 C.F.R. § 42.71; Appx0189.

#### **V. The PTAB Erred By Holding The Invention As Not Patent Eligible**

If the Court reaches the patent-eligibility issue, the Court should reverse. The claimed invention is directed to a novel, nonobvious, and patent-eligible bonus hand of a card game. The invention was and is used in casinos throughout the country. The PTAB’s decision overlooks fundamental reasoning of *Alice*, which has not been fully appreciated by this Court.

### **A. Section 101 Law and the Correct Application of *Alice***

The Supreme Court has long recognized an “important implicit exception” to 35 U.S.C. § 101: “Laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas are not patentable.” *Alice Corp. Pty v. CLS Bank Int’l*, 573 U.S. 208, 216 (2014); *Mayo Collaborative Servs. v. Prometheus Labs., Inc.*, 566 U.S. 66, 70 (2012). Patent eligibility under *Mayo/Alice* involves a two-step test. Step 1 asks whether the claims are “directed to” a patent-ineligible category. *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 217. If so, Step 2 asks if additional claim elements, either individually or as an ordered combination, provide an “inventive concept” that “transform[s] the nature of the claim[s]’ into a patent-eligible application.” *Id.*

An application faithful to *Alice* should control the analysis. *Alice* never holds that all economic practices are abstract—only fundamental economic practices that were long prevalent. 573 U.S. at 219-20. *Alice* repeatedly stresses that Step 1 “abstractness” rests on the length and scope of use, both of which were shown with factual evidence. *Id.* Indeed, the Court’s analysis is peppered with that focus. *Id.* at 219 (referencing a “fundamental economic practice long prevalent”); *id.* at 220 (“a building

block of our modern economy”); *id.* at 220 (noting the “longstanding commercial practice”).<sup>16</sup>

Conversely, *Alice* states in abundantly plain and unnuanced words that the character of claim elements—that is, the kinds of factors relevant to the “machine or transformation” test—is “beside the point.” *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 224. Machine-or-transformation reasoning does not mix-and-match with the *Mayo/Alice* test.

Under that proper view, *Mayo/Alice* Step 1 should find an “abstract idea” only where the relevant limitation is “long prevalent.” As with Step 2, merely “known” in a single prior art reference is insufficient. *Cf. Berkheimer*, 881 F.3d at 1369 (holding that “well-understood, routine, and conventional” is a fact issue for Step 2 and requires more than a § 102-type showing of “known in the prior art”).

To be sure, some decisions seemingly conflict with this view of *Alice*. *See, e.g., Trading Techs. Int’l Inc. v. IBG LLC*, 921 F.3d 1378, 1385 (Fed. Cir. 2019) (holding that, “no matter how groundbreaking the advance,” it can still be abstract); *buySAFE, Inc. v. Google, Inc.*, 765 F.3d 1350,

---

<sup>16</sup> The Supreme Court took pains to support its conclusions about the “fundamental” and “long prevalent” nature of the invention at issue by citing books and articles, one over a century old. *Id.* at 220.

1354-55 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (business methods are abstract, notwithstanding *Bilski v. Kappos*, 561 U.S. 593, 607-08 (2010)). Other cases seemingly follow *Alice*, where the Step 1 focus is on the “specific asserted improvement” that is itself new, thus ending the *Alice* inquiry. *E.g.*, *Enfish, LLC v. Microsoft Corp.*, 822 F.3d 1327, 1335-36 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Regardless, *Alice* is clear that, if an idea is “innovative,” it is not “abstract” in the *Mayo/Alice* sense.

**B. The PTAB Overlooked the Significant Improvement of the Claimed Invention**

Here, the PTAB erred in its Step 1 analysis of claim step (c), which requires a bonus hand formed by combining cards from multiple player hands. Appx0450; Appx2049. New Vision explained that this limitation captured a “significant improvement” over traditional games. Appx1151-1152; Appx1157; Appx1811; Appx1814. The PTAB never evaluated whether the specific bonus hand of claim step (c) was even known, let alone so “longstanding” and “prevalent” as to be “fundamental” and “abstract,” in the *Alice* sense. Appx0020-0029.

Neither the PTAB nor SG/Bally disputed that the bonus hand formed from cards contributed from players’ hands was new and inventive over other gaming methods. *Id.* At best, in its Step 2 analysis,

the PTAB observed that some bonus bets, formed under completely different rules, were known. Appx0040. But one rule doesn't substitute for another in Step 1.

Therefore, the PTAB erred in two respects. First, the PTAB oversimplified the claims and thereby failed to consider the claim language with the requisite precision. *CardioNet, LLC v. InfoBionic, Inc.*, 955 F.3d 1358, 1371 (Fed. Cir. 2020). Cards from a plurality of hands (claim step (c)) versus cards from the dealer and one player (the example relied on by the PTAB, Appx0040) are two different things.

Second, the PTAB analyzed Step 1 as an issue of law based on machine-or-transformation character of the claim language, when *Alice* suggests that Step 1 be analyzed as an issue of fact based on "long prevalent," at least in close cases. Either of those two errors requires reversal.

**C. The PTAB Misapplied *In re Smith* and *In re Marco Guldenaar***

The PTAB relied on *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819, and *In re Marco Guldenaar Holding B.V.*, 911 F.3d 1157 (Fed. Cir. 2018), to conclude that all rules for wagering games are "abstract." Appx0022-0029. While understandable, the PTAB's overly broad reading of those cases

constitutes reversible legal error. Neither case holds that any and all methods directed to any game are abstract and therefore *per se* patent-ineligible.

*Smith* analogizes a “wagering game” to the “fundamental economic practices” in *Alice* and to *Bilski* and concludes that the specific “wagering game” in *Smith* was “abstract.” 815 F.3d at 819. But *Smith* lays out no analysis based on the reasoning or facts of *Alice*; the nature of the analogy is unstated. Both *Bilski* and *Alice* concluded that specific economic transactions were abstract because each was “long prevalent” or “fundamental.” Neither *Bilski* nor *Alice* suggests that *all* economic transactions are abstract or that economic activities are abstract as a class. Indeed, both held the opposite: *Bilski* held that there is no categorical exclusion for business methods, 561 U.S. at 606-07, and *Alice* stresses that the claim limitation’s character is “beside the point,” 573 U.S. at 224. Only fundamental economic activities are abstract in an *Alice* sense. The analytical silence in *Smith* must be read in that light.

On careful reading, *Smith* concludes that the specific game rules at issue were “abstract” not because they were wagering rules, but because they were old. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818-19. Each step of *Smith*’s claim

was “long prevalent”: shuffling and dealing cards, reviewing a hand for pairs of certain values, dealing an additional card, the dealer standing or hitting depending on a count, and resolving a bet based on whether the player’s or dealer’s hand is closer to a target value. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 817-18.

*Guldenaar*, in turn, equates a dice game to *Smith*’s card game. 911 F.3d at 1160. But *Guldenaar*, likewise, fails to draw any reasoning from *Alice*. Like *Smith*, *Guldenaar*’s appellant did not dispute that all limitations were conventional, either alone or in combination. 911 F.3d at 1161. The one point that *Guldenaar* did contend to be novel, the markings on his dice, were discounted under the “printed matter” rule. *Id.* Read carefully, neither *Smith* nor *Guldenaar* stands for more than this: An economic practice may be a *Mayo/Alice* “abstract idea” when evidence establishes that it is “long prevalent” or “fundamental.”

Here, the PTAB never addressed the relevant question in analyzing the bonus hand limitation of step (c). The PTAB simply noted that “rules of a game” and a “bonus bet” are abstract, Appx0022-0047, Appx0083-0084, as if entire categories are abstract as a matter of law, no matter how new or innovative a specific example may be. Either the PTAB erred

in reading *Smith* too broadly, or *Smith* should be overruled *en banc* to conform this Court's precedent to *Alice* and *Bilski*.

#### **D. The Proposed Amended Claim is Patent Eligible**

New Vision proposed contingent claim amendments that would narrow the claims to require that the player hands be displayed on a video screen. Appx1130; Appx1134. The amendment was offered to meet any objection under the “machine or transformation” prong of § 101. Appx1134. The PTAB denied entry of the amendment, because the amendment added only more rules of a game and conventional hardware. Appx0053-0055.

Step (c) is new, so the claim is eligible under the *Mayo/Alice* test. The proposed amendments obviate any further problem under the “machine or transformation” test.

#### **VI. Conclusion**

For the foregoing reasons, the Board's decisions should be vacated or reversed.

Date: June 30, 2020

Respectfully submitted,

/s/ Matthew J. Dowd

Matthew J. Dowd  
Robert J. Scheffel  
Dowd Scheffel PLLC  
1717 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW  
Suite 1025  
Washington, D.C. 20006  
(202) 559-9175  
mdowd@dowdscheffel.com  
rscheffel@dowdscheffel.com

David E. Boundy  
Cambridge Technology Law LLC  
P.O. Box 590638  
Newton, MA 02459  
DavidBoundyEsq@gmail.com  
(646) 472-9737

*Counsel for Appellant New Vision  
Gaming & Development, Inc.*

**ADDENDUM**

[Trials@uspto.gov](mailto:Trials@uspto.gov)  
571-272-7822

Paper 50  
Entered: June 19, 2019

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

---

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

---

BALLY GAMING, INC., DBA BALLY TECHNOLOGIES,  
Petitioner,

v.

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.  
Patent Owner.

---

Case CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

---

Before FRANCES L. IPPOLITO, KEVIN W. CHERRY, and  
CHRISTOPHER G. PAULRAJ, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

IPPOLITO, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

FINAL WRITTEN DECISION  
*35 U.S.C. § 318(a) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.73*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

## I. INTRODUCTION

Petitioner, Bally Gaming, Inc., DBA Bally Technologies, filed a Petition seeking a covered business method (“CBM”) patent review of claims 1–12 of U.S. Patent No. 7,325,806 B1 (Ex. 1001, “the ’806 patent”), pursuant to § 18 of the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act (“AIA”). Paper 2 (“Pet.”). Patent Owner, New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc., filed a Preliminary Response (Paper 6, “Prelim. Resp.”) opposing institution of a review. At the pre-institution stage, the parties disputed whether Petitioner had sufficient standing to request a CBM patent review at the time of filing the Petition. *See* Pet. 7–8; Prelim. Resp. 12. We authorized briefing by the parties to address Petitioner’s standing prior to institution. *See* Paper 10; Paper 13; Paper 18.

On June 22, 2018, we instituted a CBM patent review on the sole asserted ground that claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent are directed to non-statutory subject matter under 35 U.S.C. § 101 as set forth in the Petition. Paper 19 (“Dec.”). After institution of trial, Patent Owner filed a Patent Owner Response (Paper 27, “PO Resp.”) and Petitioner filed a Reply (Paper 34, “Reply”). With authorization, Patent Owner filed a Sur-Reply (Paper 42, “Sur.”).

Patent Owner also filed a Motion to Amend (Paper 26, “Mot. Amend”). Petitioner filed an Opposition to Patent Owner’s Motion to Amend (“Opp. Amend”), and Patent Owner filed a Reply to Petitioner’s Opposition (“Reply Amend”). Papers 33, 38. Further, after authorization, Petitioner filed a Sur-Reply to Patent Owner’s Reply (Paper 39, “Sur. Amend”).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

An oral hearing was held on March 19, 2019. Paper 49 (“Tr.”).

We have jurisdiction under 35 U.S.C. § 6. This Final Written Decision is issued pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 328(a) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.73. In this Final Written Decision, after reviewing all relevant evidence and assertions, we determine that Petitioner has met its burden of showing, by a preponderance of the evidence, that claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent are unpatentable.

In addition, we deny Patent Owner’s Contingent Motion to Amend to replace original claims 3–8 with substitute claims 13–18.

A. *Related Matters*

The parties represent that they are involved in a lawsuit alleging a breach of an existing patent license agreement in *New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming, Inc.*, 2:17-cv-1559 (D. Nev. June 2, 2017) (“Nevada Suit”). Pet. 7–9; *see* Paper 5, 2. Further, related U.S. Patent No. 7,451,987 B2 is the subject of a CBM patent review between the same parties in CBM2018-00006. *See* Paper 5, 2.

B. *The ’806 Patent*

The ’806 patent is directed generally to a method of playing a bonus wager in a card game. Ex. 1001, (54). The ’806 patent further describes the invention as “a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a face up card from each hand of a group of hands of a base [card] game.” Ex. 1001, 2:48–50. Referring to Figures 1 and 3 (reproduced below), the ’806 patent teaches that on playing surfaces 10, 12, central dealer position 20 has a plurality of player hand locations 22, one for each player hand to be dealt. *Id.* at 3:40–50.

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent 7,325,806 B1

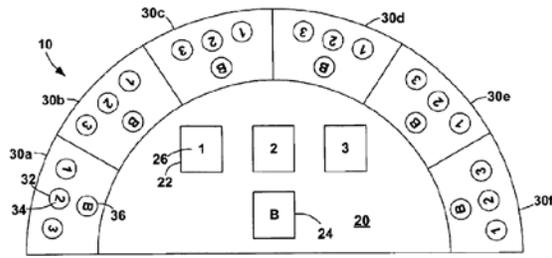


FIG. 1

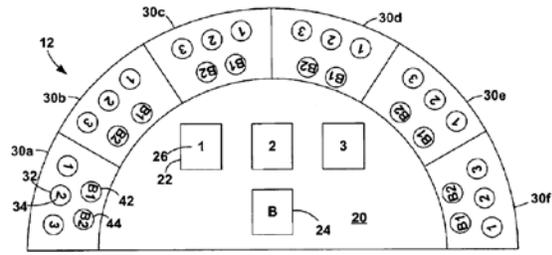


FIG. 3

Figures 1 and 3 show a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand. *Id.* at 2:30–33, 35–37. As shown in Figures 1 and 3, dealer position 20 has banker hand location 24 for the banker hand. *Id.* at 3:48–50. Symbols 26 at each player hand location 22 are the player hand identifiers, which are typically numerals running sequentially from “1”. *Id.* at 3:50–52.

According to these figures, “[e]ach player position 30 includes a symbol 32 containing a player hand identifier 34 corresponding to each player hand location 22. Ex. 1001, 3:55–57. “The example of Figure 1 has a single bonus wager symbol 36 for one bonus and the example of Figure 3 [h]as two bonus wager symbols 42, 44 for two bonuses.” Ex. 1001, 3:61–64. To play the game, each player chooses the player hand or hands that she thinks will beat the banker hand in the base game. Ex. 1001, 3:65–67.

Figure 2 is provided below to better illustrate the described game.

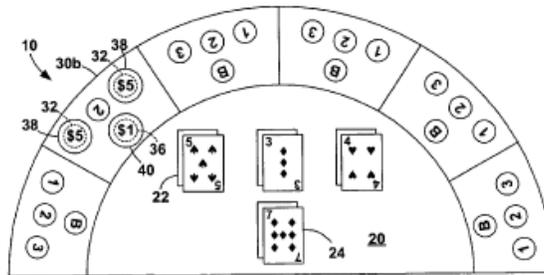


FIG. 2

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Figure 2 shows a table layout of Figure 1 with a blackjack hand dealt. *Id.* at 2:33–34. In Figure 2, the selections are made by placing the amount to be wagered on the corresponding player hand identifier symbol 32 of the player position 30. *Id.* at 3:67–4:2. The wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers. *Id.* at 4:2–4.

To participate in a bonus wager, the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location. Ex. 1001, 4:13–15. After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of hands. *Id.* at 4:30–31. The bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand. Ex. 1001, 4:39–40. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand and the banker hand(s). Ex. 1001, 4:52–53. The bonus hand may be compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the bonus hand is a winning hand and the player placing a bonus wager is a winner. Ex. 1001, 4:49–51.

*C. Illustrative Claim*

Of the challenged claims 1–12, claim 1 is independent. Independent claim 1, reproduced below, is illustrative of the claimed subject matter:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:
  - (a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
  - (b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
  - (c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;
  - (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

predetermined rank; and  
(e) paying said winning player a payout.

Ex. 1001, 6:61–7:4.

*D. Instituted Ground of Unpatentability*

We instituted review on the sole asserted ground—that claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent are unpatentable because these claims are directed to patent-ineligible subject matter under § 101. Dec. 33.

II. ANALYSIS

*A. Claim Construction*

Petitioner proposes constructions for the terms “wager,” “payout,” “card,” “deck of cards,” and “hand.” Pet. 22–23. For the purposes of this Decision, we determine that no express claim construction of any claim term is necessary. *Nidec Motor Corp. v. Zhongshan Broad Ocean Motor Co. Ltd.*, 868 F.3d 1013, 1017 (Fed. Cir. 2017 (only terms in controversy must be construed and only to the extent necessary to resolve the controversy)).

*B. Forum Selection Clause*

Before institution, Patent Owner argued that a forum selection clause in a settlement agreement (Ex. 2006<sup>1</sup>, “Agreement”) between the parties, under which Petitioner was granted a license to the ’806 patent and U.S. Patent No. 7,451,987 (the ’987 patent), requires all disputes be handled in the courts in the State of Nevada. Prelim. Resp. 6–8; Ex. 2006, 1. According to Patent Owner, Petitioner waived its opportunity to seek review by the Board because Section 13.f of the settlement agreement states:

“In the event of any dispute between any of the parties that

---

<sup>1</sup> Exhibit 2006 is a redacted public version of Exhibit 2005.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

cannot be resolved amicably, the parties agree and consent to the exclusive jurisdiction of an appropriate state or federal court located within the State of Nevada, Clark County, to resolve any such dispute.”

Ex. 2006, 7.

Based on the preliminary record, we observed that Patent Owner had not identified any controlling authority—such as by statute, rule, or binding precedent—that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. Dec. 8–11. For example, section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we noted that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). *Id.* We did not agree with Patent Owner that any portion of chapter 32, § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, explicitly provides for a contractual estoppel defense. *See id.*

In the post-institution briefing, neither party has added arguments or evidence to the record regarding this issue. We recognize, however, that the Federal Circuit in a recent non-precedential case affirmed a district court’s grant of a preliminary injunction requiring a petitioner to withdraw its PTAB petitions in light of a forum selection clause. *Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*, No. 2018-1724, 2019 WL 1758481, at \*4 (Fed. Cir. Apr. 18, 2019) (non-precedential). But, unlike the facts and procedural posture of that case, we do not have before us any court order requiring the Petition in this proceeding to be withdrawn. The Board is neither bound by

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

the party's Agreement, nor do we have independent jurisdiction to resolve any contractual dispute between the parties over the forum selection clause in that Agreement.

Thus, based on the complete record, we maintain our determination that Patent Owner has not established that any alleged contractual estoppel arising from the forum selection clause bars this proceeding.

*C. Covered Business Method Patent Review Standing*

Under § 18(a)(1)(B) of the America Invents Act (AIA), “[a] person may not file a petition for a transitional proceeding with respect to a covered business method patent unless the person or the person’s real party in interest or privy has been sued for infringement of the patent or has been charged with infringement under that patent.” AIA § 18(a)(1)(B) (emphasis added); *see also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a).

Prior to institution, the parties disputed whether Petitioner had sufficient standing to request a CBM patent review at the time of filing the Petition. *See* Pet. 7–8; Prelim. Resp. 12. Following supplemental briefing on this issue by the parties, we determined that the circumstances of the parties’ past relationship regarding allegations of infringement, the Agreement (Ex. 2006), and the parties’ current dispute of the same Agreement in district court were sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish Petitioner’s CBM patent review standing under relevant case law. Dec. 11–19; *see* Papers 10, 13, 18.

More specifically, Petitioner’s standing under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a) is based on Patent Owner’s accusation that Bally breached the Agreement, i.e.,

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

the license dispute and the breach of contract action in the Nevada Suit. In the Nevada Suit, Petitioner responded to Patent Owner's "complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the '806 patent is invalid." Pet. 7–8. In the Petitioner's Reply to Patent Owner's Preliminary Response, Petitioner argued that the Nevada Suit in federal district court already includes Petitioner's declaratory judgment counterclaim for patent invalidity, which Patent Owner had not moved to dismiss. Paper 13, 3–4. Further, Petitioner asserted separately that it was charged with infringement at the time the Petition was filed in December 2017 because Petitioner did not renew the Agreement after the expiration of the initial term (on May 28, 2017) and a real and substantial controversy about infringement existed at the time of filing of the Petition. *Id.* at 5. Petitioner argued that the same dispute regarding infringement that had been resolved by the Agreement arose again when the Agreement expired because Petitioner's post-expiration activities are not covered by the license. *Id.* (citing Ex. 1007, 1).

In its Preliminary Response, Patent Owner maintained that it has not charged Petitioner with infringement because the royalties from the Agreement "are not based on infringement but on the term and the use of a specific game." Prelim. Resp. 12. Patent Owner asserted it had not revoked the license to Petitioner and, thus, "[b]ecause Bally's products are covered by a license under the settlement agreement (Exhibit NVG2005), they do not infringe." Prelim. Resp. 13–15. Patent Owner further argued that the breach of contract action in the Nevada Suit is not an infringement suit. Prelim. Resp. 14–15.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

On the preliminary record, we determined that Petitioner had established sufficiently that it has standing to bring a covered business method patent review. Dec. 14–19. Referring to *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, 549 U.S. 118 (2007), we determined that Petitioner’s standing does not hinge on whether the Agreement has terminated or expired. Looking to the relationship between the parties, we found that the parties agree that the Agreement between the parties arose from Patent Owner’s intent to enforce the ’806 patent and the ’987 patent against the Petitioner. Dec. 17 (citing Ex. 1024, 3; Paper 13, 5). Patent Owner acknowledged that prior to the Agreement, Patent Owner “accused Defendant [Bally] of using games subject to these Patents; and . . . Defendant asserted the Patents were invalid.” Ex. 1024, 4. While those past events were allegedly resolved by the execution of the Agreement, we, nonetheless, took into consideration that the parties’ past relationship gives context for the current disputes between the parties. In particular, there remained a dispute as to whether the Agreement and license to the ’806 patent and the ’987 patent is still in effect; whether Petitioner’s products/activities infringe; and whether the patents are valid. *See* Prelim. Resp. 13–15; Paper 13, 3–5; Paper 18, 3–5. Thus, we determined that the current disputes between the parties are rooted in the original allegations of infringement that led to the signing of the Agreement in the first place. Dec. 17–19. Accordingly, taking into account the full relationship between the parties and the particular circumstances in this case, we determined that Patent Owner’s statements and actions are sufficient to establish that there

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish standing under relevant case law. *Id.*

At this stage, the record in this proceeding has not changed regarding the parties' positions on this issue. For example, Patent Owner's Response and Sur-reply do not discuss standing. *See, generally* PO Resp., Sur. Thus, based on the complete record, we maintain our determination that Petitioner has established standing to file a petition for a CBM patent review of the '806 patent based on the arguments and evidence discussed in the Decision on Institution.<sup>2</sup> *See* Dec. 11–19.

*D. Covered Business Method Patent Eligibility*

Section 18(d)(1) of the AIA defines a covered business method patent as “a patent that claims a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service, except that the term does not include patents for technological inventions.” *See also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(a) (stating the same). To determine whether a patent is a covered business method patent, “§ 18(d)(1) directs us to examine the claims when deciding whether a patent is a [covered business method] patent.” *Blue Calypso, LLC v. Groupon, Inc.*, 815 F.3d 1331, 1340 (Fed. Cir. 2016)

---

<sup>2</sup> In the Petition, Petitioner also asserts that it is not estopped from filing this Petition because neither Bally, nor any real party in interest or privy, has previously challenged the patentability of the claims of the '806 patent. Pet. 8. And Petitioner asserts that it is not barred from filing this petition under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(c) because it has not filed a civil action challenging the validity of any claim of this patent, and its counterclaim of invalidity does not constitute a civil action challenging the validity of a claim of the '806 patent. Pet. 8–9.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

(stating that “the claims at issue in the instant case have an express financial component in the form of a subsidy, or financial inducement, that encourages consumers to participate in the distribution of advertisements”); *Unwired Planet, LLC v. Google, Inc.*, 841 F.3d 1376, 1382 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“CBM patents are limited to those with claims that are directed to methods and apparatuses of particular types and with particular uses ‘in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.’”).

*1. Used in the Practice, Administration, or Management of a Financial Product or Service*

In the Decision on Institution, we determined that the ’806 patent is eligible for CBM review. Dec. 19–24. More particularly, we determined that the claimed method recited in claim 1 is expressly directed to the financial service of placing bonus wagers and paying winning players payouts based on a game of chance with a deck of cards. *See id.* at 20–21. Patent Owner does not address whether the ’806 patent “claims a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.” *See generally*, Prelim. Resp.; PO Resp.; Sur.

Based on the complete record, we determine that at least claim 1 of the ’806 patent expressly recites a method for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service. Claim 1 explicitly recites a method of playing a game that involves the placement of a “bonus wager” and “paying” a “winning player a payout.” Ex. 1001, Claim 1. The disclosure of the ’806 patent is consistent with our reading of the claim language. *See* Ex. 1001, 3:13–30, 4:2–4, 4:13–15, 4:21–28, 5:39–48. Additionally, the claimed

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

method is not merely “incidental to” or “complementary to” a financial activity because the claims are expressly directed to the placement of a “bonus wager” and “paying” a “winning player a payout.” *See Unwired Planet, LLC v. Google Inc.*, 841 F.3d 1376, 1382 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

Therefore, we determine that at least one claim of the ’806 patent is directed to “a method . . . for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.” AIA § 18(d)(1).

## 2. *Technological Invention*

Under AIA § 18(d)(1), “the term ‘covered business method patent’ . . . does not include patents for technological inventions.” Per 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b), “[i]n determining whether a patent is for a technological invention,” we consider “whether [1] the claimed subject matter as a whole recites a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art, and [2] solves a technical problem using a technical solution,” respectively, the first and second prongs of the technical invention exception.

In general, the Office Patent Trial Practice Guide, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,756 (Aug. 14, 2012) (“TPG”), provides the following guidance with respect to claim content that typically does not exclude a patent from the category of a technological invention:

(a) Mere recitation of known technologies, such as computer hardware, communication or computer networks, software, memory, computer-readable storage medium, scanners, display devices or databases, or specialized machines, such as an ATM or point of sale device.

(b) Reciting the use of known prior art technology to accomplish a process or method, even if the process or method is novel and non-obvious.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

(c) Combining prior art structures to achieve the normal, expected, or predictable result of that combination.

*Id.* at 48,763–64.

Based on the complete record, we determine that the '806 patent does not recite any technological elements and is not directed to any technological invention. With regard to the first prong of § 42.301(b), we determine that the '806 patent does not claim a technological feature that is novel and nonobvious over the prior art. The express language of the claims, such as claim 1, recites physical aspects such as cards and non-physical aspects such as the steps for players to play a card game and place a wager or receive a “payout” or a “predetermined rank,” etc. Ex. 1001, claim 1. Moreover, the Specification contemplates a game played with physical playing cards on a physical table with a live dealer. *See e.g.*, Ex. 1001, 3:1–5:54. According to the '806 patent, playing card games, use of bonus wagers, and ranking for payout were known and conventional. Ex. 1001, 1:27–40 (“Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player’s hand is compared to the banker’s hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player’s hand.”); *id.* at 2:52–57 (“There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand.”). Thus, according to the '806 patent itself, these features are not novel or nonobvious technological features. Patent Owner does not address specifically whether the challenged claims are for a technological invention. *See generally* PO Resp.; Sur.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Given this determination, we need not reach the second prong of whether the claim solves a technical problem using a technical solution. Based on the foregoing, we determine that the '806 patent is not exempt from CBM review based on a “technological invention” exception under 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b).

### *3. Conclusion—A Covered Business Method Patent*

A single claim is sufficient to institute a covered business method patent review because § 18(d)(1) of the AIA indicates a patent is eligible for review if the subject matter of at least one claim is directed to a covered business method. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 324(a); Final Rule, 77 Fed. Reg. at 48,736 (Response to Comment 8). In view of the foregoing, we determine that the '806 patent is a covered business method patent under AIA § 18(d)(1).

#### *E. Level of Ordinary Skill in the Art*

Patent Owner asserts that the skilled artisan is someone with some high school education who has worked in the gaming industry. PO Resp. 16. Petitioner does not contest Patent Owner’s proposed level of ordinary skill in the art. Tr. 5:17–18:1.

Based on the complete record, we adopt and apply Patent Owner’s definition of the level of ordinary skill because we are satisfied that this definition comports with the level of skill necessary to understand and implement the teachings of the '806 patent. *See* Ex. 1001, 1:22–25 (“The present invention relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands.”); *see* Ex. 2007 ¶ 3.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*F. Law of Patent-Eligible Subject Matter Under 35 U.S.C. § 101*

An invention is patent-eligible if it claims a “new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter.” 35 U.S.C. § 101.

However, the Supreme Court has long interpreted 35 U.S.C. § 101 to include implicit exceptions: “[l]aws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas” are not patentable. *E.g.*, *Alice Corp. v. CLS Bank Int’l*, 573 U.S. 208, 216 (2014).

In determining whether a claim falls within an excluded category, we are guided by the Supreme Court’s two-step framework, described in *Mayo* and *Alice*. *Id.* at 217–18 (citing *Mayo Collaborative Servs. v. Prometheus Labs., Inc.*, 566 U.S. 66, 75–77 (2012)). In accordance with that framework, we first determine what concept the claim is “directed to.” *See Alice*, 573 U.S. at 219 (“On their face, the claims before us are drawn to the concept of intermediated settlement, i.e., the use of a third party to mitigate settlement risk.”); *see also Bilski v. Kappos*, 561 U.S. 593, 611 (2010) (“Claims 1 and 4 in petitioners’ application explain the basic concept of hedging, or protecting against risk.”).

Concepts determined to be abstract ideas, and thus patent ineligible, include certain methods of organizing human activity, such as fundamental economic practices (*Alice*, 573 U.S. at 219–20; *Bilski*, 561 U.S. at 611); mathematical formulas (*Parker v. Flook*, 437 U.S. 584, 594–95 (1978)); and mental processes (*Gottschalk v. Benson*, 409 U.S. 63, 69 (1972)). Concepts determined to be patent eligible include physical and chemical processes, such as “molding rubber products” (*Diamond v. Diehr*, 450 U.S. 175, 191 (1981)); “tanning, dyeing, making water-proof cloth, vulcanizing India

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

rubber, smelting ores” (*id.* at 182 n.7 (quoting *Corning v. Burden*, 56 U.S. 252, 267–68 (1853))); and manufacturing flour (*Benson*, 409 U.S. at 69 (citing *Cochrane v. Deener*, 94 U.S. 780, 785 (1876))).

In *Diehr*, the claim at issue recited a mathematical formula, but the Supreme Court held that “[a] claim drawn to subject matter otherwise statutory does not become nonstatutory simply because it uses a mathematical formula.” *Diehr*, 450 U.S. at 176; *see also id.* at 191 (“We view respondents’ claims as nothing more than a process for molding rubber products and not as an attempt to patent a mathematical formula.”). Having said that, the Supreme Court also indicated that a claim “seeking patent protection for that formula in the abstract . . . is not accorded the protection of our patent laws, . . . and this principle cannot be circumvented by attempting to limit the use of the formula to a particular technological environment.” *Id.* (citing *Benson* and *Flook*); *see, e.g., id.* at 187 (“It is now commonplace that an *application* of a law of nature or mathematical formula to a known structure or process may well be deserving of patent protection.”).

If the claim is “directed to” an abstract idea, we turn to the second step of the *Alice* and *Mayo* framework, where “we must examine the elements of the claim to determine whether it contains an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 221 (quotation marks omitted). “A claim that recites an abstract idea must include ‘additional features’ to ensure ‘that the [claim] is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the [abstract idea].’” *Id.* (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 77).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

“[M]erely requir[ing] generic computer implementation[] fail[s] to transform that abstract idea into a patent-eligible invention.” *Id.*

*G. USPTO 2019 Revised Patent Subject Matter Eligibility Guidance*

The PTO recently published revised guidance on the application of § 101. *See* 2019 Revised Patent Subject Matter Eligibility Guidance, 84 Fed. Reg. 50 (Jan. 7, 2019) (“*Guidance*”). Under the *Guidance*, we first look to whether the claim recites:

(1) any judicial exceptions, including certain groupings of abstract ideas (i.e., mathematical concepts, certain methods of organizing human activity such as a fundamental economic practice, or mental processes); and

(2) additional elements that integrate the judicial exception into a practical application (see MPEP § 2106.05(a)–(c), (e)–(h)).

*See Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 51–55. Only if a claim (1) recites a judicial exception and (2) does not integrate that exception into a practical application, do we then look to whether the claim:

(3) adds a specific limitation beyond the judicial exception that is not “well-understood, routine, conventional” in the field (*see* MPEP § 2106.05(d)); or

(4) simply appends well-understood, routine, conventional activities previously known to the industry, specified at a high level of generality, to the judicial exception.

*See id.* at 56.

*H. Subject Matter Eligibility of Challenged Claims Under § 101*

Petitioner asserts claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent recite patent ineligible subject matter under § 101. Patent Owner disagrees that the challenged claims are patent ineligible, and relies on the Declaration of John

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Feola (Exhibit 2007). We follow the framework set forth in the *Guidance* for our analysis.

*1. Guidance Step 1*

Under the *Guidance*, we first must determine “whether the claim is to a statutory category (Step 1).” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. Here, it is undisputed that the claims recite a statutory *process*, namely the process of playing a game with a deck of cards. *See* Ex. 1001, 6:61–8:13.

*2. Guidance Step 2A, Prong 1: Whether Challenged Claims Recite an Abstract Idea*

Under the next step in the *Guidance* (Step 2A, Prong 1), we must determine whether the claims recite limitations that fall within any of the recognized categories of abstract ideas. The *Guidance* identifies certain groupings of abstract ideas that have been recognized under the case law: mathematical concepts, certain methods of organizing human activity, such as fundamental economic principles or practices, and mental processes. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52. As part of this inquiry, we must examine the relevant limitations in the context of the claim language as a whole. *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 218 n.3. “The § 101 inquiry must focus on the language of the [a]sserted [c]laims themselves.” *Synopsys, Inc. v. Mentor Graphics Corp.*, 839 F.3d 1138, 1149 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *Accenture Global Servs., GmbH v. Guidewire Software, Inc.*, 728 F.3d 1336, 1345 (Fed. Cir. 2013) (admonishing that “the important inquiry for a § 101 analysis is to look to the claim”); *see also Content Extraction & Transmission LLC v. Wells Fargo Bank, Nat’l Ass’n*, 776 F.3d 1343, 1346 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (“We focus here on whether the claims of the asserted patents fall within the excluded category of abstract ideas.”). “An abstract idea can generally be described at

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

different levels of abstraction.” *Apple, Inc. v. Ameranth, Inc.*, 842 F.3d 1229, 1240 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Yet our reviewing court has cautioned that characterizing claims at a “high level of abstraction and untethered from the language of the claims all but ensures that the exceptions to § 101 swallow the rule.” *Enfish, LLC v. Microsoft Corp.*, 822 F.3d 1327, 1337 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

*a. Petitioner’s Contentions*

Petitioner argues that the challenged claims<sup>3</sup> are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game. Pet. 25. Petitioner relies primarily on the Federal Circuit decision in *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“*Smith*”), which according to Petitioner, held that rules for playing wagering-based card games are abstract. Pet. 25. Petitioner acknowledges that in *Smith*, the Federal Circuit commented that claims directed to conducting a game using a new or original deck of cards could potentially survive step two of *Alice*. See Reply 8–9; Tr. 8:5–10. However, Petitioner asserts that the claims of the ’806 patent “do not involve anything like a new or original deck of cards. Instead, they simply involve a bonus wager that suffers from the same defects as the claims in *Smith*—it is an abstract idea, because it is only ‘a set of rules for a game’ and is a *fundamental economic practice*.” Reply 9 (emphasis added).

---

<sup>3</sup> Petitioner treats independent claim 1 as representative and asserts that the “dependent claims add minor variations on the rules set out in independent claim 1, such as limiting the bonus hand to a poker hand, awarding a payout as a multiple of the bonus wager, and forming the bonus hand from cards that are dealt face up.” Pet. 25; see also Tr. 8:20–22 (“There is no dispute that Claim 1 of each of the challenged patents is representative of all the claims -- all the challenged claims.”).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Additionally, following our authorization, Petitioner submitted the Federal Circuit decision in *In re Marco Guldenaar Holding B.V.*, 911 F.3d 1157 (Fed. Cir. 2018) (“*Guldenaar*”). Paper 35; Paper 36; Exhibit 1038. The decision in *Guldenaar*, upholding the Board’s affirmance of a §101 rejection, issued on December 28, 2018, after Petitioner submitted its Reply to Patent Owner’s Response. At the oral hearing, Petitioner commented that *Guldenaar* calls into question the “dictum” in *Smith* because “*Guldenaar* on its facts involved a new set of dice -- a game -- rules for a game involving a new set of dice, not conventional dice.” Tr. 8:11–15.

*b. Patent Owner’s Contentions*

In its Patent Owner Response and Sur-reply to Petitioner’s Reply, Patent Owner does not directly address whether the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea under *Alice* Step 1 or the *Guidance* Step 2A, Prong 1. *See* Sur. 5–8 (addressing case-law and *Guidance* Step 2B).<sup>4</sup> Patent Owner does, however, assert that *Smith* and the other cases relied upon by Petitioner are not controlling. *See* Sur. 6–8. Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is distinguishable because the decision does not address the applicable level of ordinary skill, evidence related to what is “well-understood, routine and conventional,”<sup>5</sup> or evidence of the commercial significance of the invention.

---

<sup>4</sup> We note that the *Guidance* issued after both Patent Owner’s Response and Petitioner’s Reply had been submitted. Nonetheless, both parties were afforded an opportunity to request supplemental briefing to address the *Guidance*. Both parties declined to do so. *See* Paper 35, 3.

<sup>5</sup> The *Guidance* advises that the “*Alice* Step 1” (*Guidance* Step 2A) analysis should exclude consideration of whether additional claim elements represent well-understood, routine, and conventional activity. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 55. “[R]evised Step 2A specifically excludes consideration of whether the

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

PO Resp. 19 (citing *Berkheimer v. HP*, 881 F.3d 1360 (Fed. Cir. 2018)). Patent Owner also asserts that, unlike the *Smith* claims, the steps recited in claim 1 of the '806 patent of “(c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands; (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank” are significantly more than what was known in the art in 2004. PO Resp. 19 (citing Ex. 2011). Further, Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is an appeal from a patent examiner’s rejection and the Board’s affirmance of that rejection, which is different from the posture here where the patent examiner determined during prosecution that the claims included allowable patent-eligible subject matter. PO Resp. 19–20. To the extent these arguments apply to our discussion of *Alice* Step 1 and *Guidance* Step 2A, Prong 1, we address these arguments in this section.

*c. Discussion*

For the reasons discussed below, we determine that the challenged claims recite a judicial exception recognized under the *Guidance* and in prior cases as an abstract idea.

Turning to claim 1, the following specific limitations recite the steps or *rules* for playing a bonus wagering game. Claim 1 recites a “method of playing game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of “(a) affording

---

additional elements represent well-understood, routine, conventional activity. Instead, analysis of well-understood, routine, conventional activity is done in Step 2B.” *Id.*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

a player the opportunity to *place a bonus wager*"; "(b) *dealing out said cards* to each of a plurality of hands"; "(c) *forming only one bonus hand* from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands"; (d) *identifying said player as a winning player* if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank"; and "(e) *paying said winning player a payout.*" Ex. 1001, 6:61–7:4 (emphasis added).

Dependent claims 2–12 recite additional features for gameplay, including which cards the bonus hand is formed from (claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9), the makeup of the plurality of hands (claims 3 and 6), and how the bonus wager/payout is paid (claims 10–12). For example, claim 2 additionally recites "wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up." As another example, claim 3 recites "wherein said hands are player hands." And, claim 10 recites "wherein said payout is a multiple of said bonus wager." Thus, each of claims 1–12 recites instructions or rules for playing a wagering game.

Our reading of the challenged claims is consistent with the Specification of the '806 patent. The Specification provides that the described invention is directed to a "method of playing a bonus wager" (Ex. 1001, Title), and "relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands." Ex. 1001, 1:22–25. Further, the Specification describes the mechanics of game play, which involve the house determination of

the *rules with which the game will be played*, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands,

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

Ex. 1001, 3:31–37 (emphasis added). Thus, consistent with our reading of the claims, the '806 patent describes the invention as a set of “rules” that are determined for how the bonus wagering game will be played.

With this in mind, we agree with Petitioner that the Federal Circuit has found similar methods of conducting a wagering game to constitute a fundamental economic practice under the first step of *Alice*. In *Smith*, the Applicants appealed an *ex parte* decision by the Board that affirmed the examiner’s rejection of pending claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Claim 1 at issue in *Smith* recited:

1. A method of conducting a wagering game comprising:

[a] ) a dealer providing at least one deck of ... physical playing cards and shuffling the physical playing cards to form a random set of physical playing cards;

[b] ) the dealer accepting at least one first wager from each participating player on a player game hand against a banker’s/dealer’s hand;

[c] ) the dealer dealing only two cards from the random set of physical playing cards to each designated player and two cards to the banker/dealer such that the designated player and the banker/dealer receive the same number of exactly two random physical playing cards;

[d] ) the dealer examining respective hands to determine in any hand has a Natural 0 count from totaling count from cards, defined as the first two random physical playing cards in a hand being a pair of 5’s, 10’s, jacks, queens or kings;

[e] ) the dealer resolving any player versus dealer wagers between each individual player hand that has a Natural 0 count and between the dealer hand and all player hands where a Natural

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

0 is present in the dealer hand, while the dealer exposes only a single card to the players;

[f] ) as between each player and the dealer where neither hand has a Natural 0, the dealer allowing each player to elect to take a maximum of one additional card or standing pat on the initial two card player hand, while still having seen only one dealer card;

[g] ) the dealer/banker remaining pat within a first certain predetermined total counts and being required to take a single hit within a second predetermined total counts, where the first total counts range does not overlap the second total counts range;

[h] ) after all possible additional random physical playing cards have been dealt, the dealer comparing a value of each designated player's hand to a final value of the banker's/dealer's hand wherein said value of the designated player's hand and the banker's/dealer's hand is in a range of zero to nine points based on a pre-established scoring system wherein aces count as one point, tens and face cards count as zero points and all other cards count as their face value and wherein a two-digit hand total is deemed to have a value corresponding to the one's digit of the two-digit total;

[i] ) the dealer resolving the wagers based on whether the designated player's hand or the banker's/dealer's hand is nearest to a value of 0.

*Smith*, 815 F.3d at 817–818. Applying the first step of *Alice*, the Federal Circuit determined that

Applicants' claims, directed to rules for conducting a wagering game, compare to other "fundamental economic practice[s]" found abstract by the Supreme Court. *See id.* As the Board reasoned here, "[a] wagering game is, effectively, a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations based on probabilities created during the distribution of the cards." J.A. 15. In *Alice*, the Supreme Court held that a method of exchanging financial obligations was drawn to an abstract idea. 134 S. Ct. at 2356–57. Likewise, in *Bilski*, the Court determined that a claim to a method of hedging risk was directed to an

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

abstract idea. 561 U.S. at 611, 130 S. Ct. 3218. Here, *Applicants’ claimed “method of conducting a wagering game” is drawn to an abstract idea much like Alice’s method of exchanging financial obligations and Bilski’s method of hedging risk.*

*Id.* at 818–819 (emphasis added).

As in *Smith*, the claims of the ’806 patent are also drawn to rules and instructions for playing a wagering game, which is effectively a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations (e.g., payout of bonus wagers) based on probabilities created during the distribution of cards. Thus, similar to the claims at issue in *Smith*, claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent recite a fundamental economic practice, which is one of certain methods of organizing human activity identified in the *Guidance*, and thus considered an abstract idea.

The Federal Circuit’s decision in *Guldenaar* further guides our analysis. In *Guldenaar*, the appellant appealed an *ex parte* decision by the Board affirming the examiner’s rejection of pending claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Claim 1 at issue in *Guldenaar* recited:

A method of playing a dice game comprising:

providing a set of dice, the set of dice comprising a first die, a second die, and a third die, wherein only a single face of the first die has a first die marking, wherein only two faces of the second die have an identical second die marking, and wherein only three faces of the third die have an identical third die marking;

placing at least one wager on at least one of the following: that the first die marking on the first die will appear face up, that the second die marking on the second die will appear face up, that the third die marking on the third die will appear face up, or any combination thereof;

rolling the set of dice; and

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

paying a payout amount if the at least one wager occurs.  
*Guldenaar*, 911 F.3d at 1159.

The Federal Circuit Court began its analysis, under *Alice* Step 1, by comparing the claims with those in *Smith*. *Id.* at 1160 (Noting that “*In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816 (Fed. Cir. 2016), is highly instructive in this case.”).

The Court found that

Appellant’s claimed “method of playing a dice game,” including placing wagers on whether certain die faces will appear face up, is, as with the claimed invention in *Smith*, directed to a method of conducting a wagering game, with the probabilities based on dice rather than on cards. Given the strong similarities to the ineligible claims in *Smith*, Appellant’s claims likewise are drawn to an abstract idea.

*Id.* The Federal Circuit noted that the Patent Office articulated a more refined characterization of the abstract idea as the *rules for playing games*, which is one type of method of organizing human activity. *Id.*

Like the claims at issue in *Guldenaar*, we find that the challenged claims of the ’806 patent also recite *rules for playing a game*, specifically rules for playing a wagering game, which the Federal Circuit has determined is another method of organizing human activity that is patent-ineligible. *See id.* That being the case, we determine that the challenged claims recite *both* a fundamental economic practice and rules for playing games. We note that our determination is consistent with the *Guidance*, which identifies among the certain methods of organizing human activity both “fundamental economic principles or practices” and “managing personal behavior or relationships or interactions between people (including social activities, teaching, and following rules or instructions).” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52 n. 13 (citing *Smith*).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

In reaching these determinations, we have also considered Patent Owner's arguments that *Smith* is distinguishable. *See* PO Resp. 19. First, Patent Owner asserts that *Smith* is distinguishable because that court did not review evidence regarding the level of ordinary skill in the art. PO Resp. 19 (“*Smith* did not address the skill level in the skilled artisan, as required after *Berkheimer*.”). Nonetheless, for *Alice* Step 1, our inquiry is the same as that performed by the Federal Circuit in *Smith*. That is, we consider whether the claims at issue are directed to a patent-ineligible concept such as an abstract idea. Patent Owner has not explained sufficiently, nor do we independently see, how any evidence or arguments regarding the level of ordinary skill in the art in this proceeding distinguishes the course of our analysis under *Alice* Step 1 from that performed in *Smith*.

Moreover, as discussed above, the level of ordinary skill is not in dispute between the parties in this proceeding. Tr. 5:17–18:1. We have already adopted Patent Owner's proposed level of skill. Thus, our discussion of the level of skill is limited to adopting the level of skill that Petitioner and Patent Owner have both agreed to, which we determine is consistent with the disclosure of the '806 patent. As such, we are not persuaded that there is any meaningful difference in this regard between *Smith* and the instant proceeding that distinguishes *Smith*.

Second, Patent Owner has not explained sufficiently how evidence of the “commercial significance of the invention” distinguishes *Smith*.<sup>6</sup> *See*

---

<sup>6</sup> Patent Owner also asserts that the “significance of the improvement found in the '806 patent over 2004 gaming technology is evident in the commercial success of the patent.” PO Resp. 18. We also address this argument in our discussion of *Alice* Step 2, *Guidance* Step 2B.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

PO Resp. 18–19. Patent Owner contends that its settlement agreement and license with Petitioner, and the successful implementation of games covered by the patent in many casinos demonstrate commercial success. *Id.* at 18 (citing Ex. 2004; Ex. 2005; Ex. 2007; Ex. 2011). Even assuming that the ’806 patent is commercially successful or significant, as Patent Owner proposes, we are not persuaded this would render the claims of the ’806 patent any less abstract under *Alice*, Step 1 (and *Guidance*, Step 2A, Prong 1). “Commercial success is not necessarily a proxy for an improvement in a technology nor does it necessarily indicate that claims were drawn to patent eligible subject matter.” *Versata Dev. Grp., Inc. v. SAP Am., Inc.*, 793 F.3d 1306, 1335 (Fed. Cir. 2015). As discussed, the challenged claims explicitly recite features that are rules/instructions for organizing human activities (i.e., fundamental economic practice and rules of playing a game). Patent Owner has not explained persuasively why the license agreement, settlement, and casino games mitigate or alter this reading of the express language and limitations recited in the challenged claims. *See* PO Resp. 19. Thus, we are not persuaded that we must read the claims differently due to any purported commercial success or that *Smith* is distinguishable on this basis.

Third, Patent Owner asserts that, unlike the *Smith* claims, the steps of “(c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands” (“Step C”); and “(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank” (“Step D”), recited in claim 1, are significantly more than what was known in the art in 2004. PO Resp. 19 (citing Ex. 2011).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

This argument is not persuasive. “Eligibility and novelty are separate inquiries.” *Two-Way Media Ltd. v. Comcast Cable Commc’ns, LLC*, 874 F.3d 1329, 1340 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (citing *Affinity Labs of Tex., LLC v. DIRECTV, LLC*, 838 F.3d 1253, 1263 (Fed. Cir. 2016) for the holding that even assuming that a particular claimed feature was novel does not “avoid the problem of abstractness.”); *see also buySAFE, Inc. v. Google, Inc.*, 765 F.3d 1350, 1352 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (“[L]aws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas, no matter how ‘groundbreaking, innovative, or even brilliant’ . . . are outside what the statute means by ‘new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter.’”) (citing 35 U.S.C. § 101; *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 221–22; *Association for Molecular Pathology v. Myriad Genetics, Inc.*, 133 S. Ct. 2107, 2116–17 (2013)). Thus, the alleged novelty of Step C and Step D does not persuade us to discount or ignore *Smith’s* controlling eligibility analysis.

Additionally, during the oral hearing, Patent Owner asserted that it did not agree that “Step C” of the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea. *See* Tr. 14:18–16:14. Patent Owner appears to argue that Step C and Step D of the challenged claims do not recite an abstract idea. *See id.*

To the extent that this argument has been advanced, we reiterate our determination that these steps recite *rules* for playing a bonus wagering game. Step C recites the rule for how the dealer and players *form the bonus hand* in the wagering game (i.e., rules for playing a game). Similarly, Step D recites the rule for how the winning player is identified in the activity of playing a wagering game. The disclosure of the Specification comports with our finding. *See* Ex. 1001, 3:31–37 (“Before game play begins, the house

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

determines the *rules* with which the game will be played, including . . . the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.”) (emphasis added), 4:39–5:39.

Fourth, Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is distinguishable because it is an *ex parte* appeal decision, which is different from an issued patent where the patent examiner determined that the patent application recited allowable patent-eligible subject matter. PO Resp. 19–20; *see* Sur. 8. Patent Owner has not explained why this difference matters for the patent-eligibility inquiry that we must conduct here. *See id.* We decline to speculate on the basis for Patent Owner’s position. Rather, we observe that the § 101 inquiry is the same regardless of whether it is addressed in the context of examination, as in *Smith*, or in the context of a contested proceeding over an issued patent, as in the case here. Thus, we are not persuaded that *Smith* is distinguishable merely because our § 101 inquiry arises in a CBM patent review of an issued patent.

In sum, we determine that the challenged claims, each considered as a whole, recite and are directed to rules for playing a bonus wagering game. Rules for games have been considered to be a type of method of organizing human activity that are abstract ideas. *Guldenaar*, 911 F.3d at 1160–61. In addition, as discussed, a wagering game is a fundamental economic practice. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818. Accordingly, we conclude the challenged claims recite a fundamental economic practice and rules for playing games (i.e., interactions between people), which are certain methods of organizing human activity that are identified in the *Guidance* as abstract ideas.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52.

3. *Guidance Step 2A, Prong 2: Whether Challenged Claims Integrate the Abstract Idea into a Practical Application*

The Supreme Court has long distinguished between abstract ideas themselves (which are not patent eligible) and the integration of those abstract ideas into practical applications (which are patent eligible). *See, e.g., Alice*, 573 U.S. at 217 (explaining that “in applying the § 101 exception, we must distinguish between patents that claim the ‘buildin[g] block[s]’ of human ingenuity and those that integrate the building blocks into something more” (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 89), and stating that *Mayo* “set forth a framework for distinguishing patents that claim laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas from those that claim patent-eligible applications of those concepts”); *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 80, 84 (noting that the Court in *Diehr* found “the overall process patent eligible because of the way the additional steps of the process integrated the equation into the process as a whole,” but the Court in *Benson* “held that simply implementing a mathematical principle on a physical machine, namely a computer, was not a patentable application of that principle”); *Bilski*, 561 U.S. at 611 (“*Diehr* explained that while an abstract idea, law of nature, or mathematical formula could not be patented, ‘an *application* of a law of nature or mathematical formula to a known structure or process may well be deserving of patent protection.’” (quoting *Diehr*, 450 U.S. at 187) (emphasis in original)); *Diehr*, 450 U.S. at 187, 192 n.14 (explaining that the process in *Flook* was ineligible not because it contained a mathematical formula, but because it did not provide an application of the formula). The Federal Circuit likewise

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

has distinguished between claims that are “directed to” a judicial exception (which require further analysis to determine their eligibility) and those that are not (which are therefore patent eligible). *See, e.g.*, MPEP § 2106.06(b) (summarizing *Enfish, McRO, Inc. v. Bandai Namco Games Am. Inc.*, 837 F.3d 1299 (Fed. Cir. 2016), and other cases that found claims eligible as improvements to technology or computer functionality instead of abstract ideas).

In agreement with Supreme Court and Federal Circuit precedent, the *Guidance* provides that if a claim recites an abstract idea, it must be further analyzed to determine whether the recited judicial exception is integrated into a practical application. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. Specifically, under USPTO *Guidance* Step 2A, Prong 2, a claim reciting an abstract idea is not “directed to” the abstract idea if the “claim as a whole integrates the recited judicial exception into a practical application of that exception.” *Id.* Step 2A, Prong 2 is evaluated by “(a) [i]dentifying whether there are any additional elements recited in the claim beyond the judicial exception(s); and (b) evaluating those additional elements individually and in combination to determine whether they integrate the exception into a practical application.” *Id.* at 54–55. “A claim that integrates a judicial exception into a practical application will apply, rely on, or use the judicial exception in a manner that imposes a meaningful limit on the judicial exception, such that the claim is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the judicial exception.” *Id.* at 53.

According to the *Guidance*, the following non-exhaustive exemplary considerations are indicative that an additional element or combination of

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

elements may be been integrated into a practical application:

- 1) An additional element reflects an improvement in the functioning of a computer, or an improvement to other technology or technical field;
- 2) An additional element that applies or uses a judicial exception to effect a particular treatment or prophylaxis for a disease or medical condition;
- 3) An additional element implements a judicial exception with, or uses a judicial exception in conjunction with, a particular machine or manufacture that is integral to the claim;
- 4) An additional element effects a transformation or reduction of a particular article to a different state or thing;
- 5) An additional element applies or uses the judicial exception in some other meaningful way beyond generally linking the use of the judicial exception to a particular technological environment, such that the claim as a whole is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the exception;

*Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 55. The *Guidance* “uses the term ‘additional elements’ to refer to claim features, limitations, and/or steps that are recited in the claim beyond the identified judicial exception.” *Id.* at 55 n.24.

We determine that the challenged claims do not integrate the recited judicial exception (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people) into a practical application, as recognized by precedent. Claim 1 expressly recites a “method of a playing game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of “(a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager”; “(b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands”; “(c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands”; (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank”; and “(e) paying said winning player a

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

payout.” Ex. 1001, 6:61–7:4. These steps, individually and in combination, recite rules for “playing a *wagering* game with at least one deck of cards.”

Further, as discussed above, dependent claims 2–12 also recite *rules* for gameplay, including from which cards the bonus hand is formed (claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9), the makeup of the plurality of hands (claims 3 and 6), and how the bonus wager/payout is paid (claims 10–12). Ex. 1001, 7:5–8:13. These elements, individually and in combination, add limitations to independent claim 1 that are also rules for playing a wagering game with a deck of cards. Thus, *all* of the limitations in claims 1–12, including additional limitations in dependent claims 2–12, recite certain methods of organizing human activity (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people (following rules of playing a bonus wagering game)).

More specifically, we observe that the challenged claims do not recite an additional element beyond the recited rules that (1) applies or uses a judicial exception to effect a particular treatment or prophylaxis for a disease or medical condition; (2) implements a judicial exception with, or uses a judicial exception in conjunction with, a particular *machine* or *manufacture* that is integral to the claim; or (3) effects a transformation or reduction of a particular article to a different state or thing (e.g., deck of cards are not transformed). *See* Ex. 1001, 6:61–8:13.

In addition, none of the recited limitations of the challenged claims (considered individually or in combination) reflect an improvement to the functioning of a computer/technology/technical field. As discussed, claim 1 recites a steps for playing a wagering game with a *deck of cards*, but does

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

not recite an improvement to a computer or specific technology. Ex. 1001, 6:61–7:4. Likewise, dependent claims 2–12 do not recite an improvement to a computer or specific technology. *See* Ex. 1001, 7:5–8:13. We do note that the '806 patent teaches that

[t]he term “card” is used in the present application to indicate a playing card, a playing tile, or any facsimile thereof. For example, a card can be a paper playing card, a physical playing tile, an image of a card or tile on a video display, an image of a card or tile on a scratch ticket, etc. Any representation of a playing card or tile is contemplated. A “deck of cards” refers to one or more complete decks of playing cards or a set of pai gow tiles.

Ex. 1001, 3:1–9. In this way, a deck of cards may be a physical deck of cards or a facsimile such as a card on a video display. Nonetheless, we are not persuaded that the physicality of the cards indicates any improvement to a technology or technical field. The card deck, as claimed, is a generic deck of cards, which operates only as a tool for playing the wagering game. As noted in *Smith*, the use of a *standard* deck of cards in a wagering game is not sufficient to confer patent-eligibility. *Smith*, 815 F.3d. at 819.

The challenged claims also do not recite an additional element that applies or uses the judicial exception in some other meaningful way beyond generally linking the use of the judicial exception to a particular technological environment, such that the claim as a whole is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the exception. As discussed, the limitations of the challenged claims, considered individually or in combination, all constitute the rules for playing a bonus wagering game. Thus, the claims do not, as a whole, integrate the recited judicial exception into a practical application of that exception.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

In sum, the challenged claims recite a set of rules for playing a bonus wagering game, which may be considered both a fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people, and thereby an abstract idea under the *Guidance*. Further, for the foregoing reasons, we also find that the challenged claims do not integrate the abstract idea into a practical application under the *Guidance*. Thus, we conclude that the claims are directed to an abstract idea.

#### 4. *Guidance, Step 2B: Whether Challenged Claims Contain an Inventive Concept*

Under the second step of the *Alice* inquiry, we must “scrutinize the claim elements more microscopically” for additional elements that might be understood to “transform the nature of the claim” into a patent-eligible application of an abstract idea. *Elec. Power Grp., LLC v. Alstom S.A.*, 830 F.3d 1350, 1353–54 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *RecogniCorp, LLC v. Nintendo Co.*, 855 F.3d 1322, 1327 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (“To save a patent at [*Alice*] step two, an inventive concept must be evident in the claims.”). That is, we determine whether the claims include an “inventive concept,” i.e., an element or combination of elements sufficient to ensure that the patent in practice amounts to significantly more than a patent on the abstract idea itself. *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 221. “Abstract ideas, including a set of rules for a game, may be patent-eligible if they contain an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819 (citing *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357). But appending purely conventional steps to an abstract idea does not supply a sufficiently inventive concept. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357–58.

Consistent with the foregoing, under the *Guidance*, if a claim has been

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

determined to recite a judicial exception under the *Guidance*, Step 2A, we must evaluate the additional elements individually and in combination under the *Guidance*, Step 2B, to determine whether they provide an inventive concept (i.e., whether the additional elements amount to significantly more than the exception itself).<sup>7</sup> Per the *Guidance*, we must consider in Step 2B whether an additional element or combination of elements: (1) “[a]dds a specific limitation or combination of limitations that are not well-understood, routine, conventional activity in the field, which is indicative that an inventive concept may be present”; or (2) “simply appends well-understood, routine, conventional activities previously known to the industry, specified at a high level of generality, to the judicial exception, which is indicative that an inventive concept may not be present.”

*Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 56.

*a. Petitioner’s Contentions*

Petitioner contends that the ’806 patent teaches bonus wagers were well-known in the prior art and that

there is nothing transformative about the underlying games on which the player wagers, which can be any “one of any number of games including poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, and pai gow poker” (Ex. 1001 at 1:59-61), or the generic or standard cards with which they are played. (*Id.* at 1:61-62.)

Pet. 28. Petitioner adds that the limitations of dependent claims 2–12 are

---

<sup>7</sup> The patent eligibility inquiry may contain underlying issues of fact. *Mortg. Grader, Inc. v. First Choice Loan Servs. Inc.*, 811 F.3d 1314, 1325 (Fed. Cir. 2016). In particular, “[t]he question of whether a claim element or combination of elements is well-understood, routine and conventional to a skilled artisan in the relevant field is a question of fact.” *Berkheimer v. HP Inc.*, 881 F.3d 1360, 1368 (Fed. Cir. 2018).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

likewise generic and non-inventive. Pet. 29 (“Forming the bonus hand from face-up cards (claims 2, 5, and 8); or from a combination of player and banker hands (claims 6 and 7) are merely additional conventional activities. The same is true for those dependent claims that specify how the payout is calculated and paid.”).

*b. Patent Owner’s Contentions*

Patent Owner presents several arguments, many of which we have addressed above. Patent Owner contends, for example, that Petitioner does not address the level of ordinary skill in the art, which Patent Owner contends is necessary to determine what would have been well-understood, routine and conventional to a skilled artisan. *See* PO Resp. 8 (“There is no evidence presented. Just vague attorney argument.”), 9 (“In order to determine if the claims are ‘well-understood, routine and conventional to a skilled artisan in the relevant field’ we need to determine who the ‘skilled artisan’ is. ‘[T]his is a question of fact’. *Berkheimer*. Bally presents no facts nor any discussion of a skilled artisan.”), 10–11, 14–15. Patent Owner further argues that the challenged claims are significantly more than what existed at the time of the invention. *See* PO Resp. 16–18; *see* Sur. 5–6. Additionally, Patent Owner distinguishes *Smith* on the basis that this proceeding has evidence related to commercial success and what is well-understood, routine, and conventional by a skilled artisan. PO Resp. 19.

*c. Discussion*

Based on the complete record, we determine that Petitioner has provided sufficient evidence that the challenged claims recite well-understood, conventional, and routine activities.

The ’806 patent itself acknowledges that rules for bonus wagering and

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

gameplay were well-known in the art. *See* Pet. 27–29. The '806 patent expressly states:

*There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand. Players do not control the hands, that is, no player hands are assigned to players. The dealer plays all of the hands according to rules that permit little or no discretion in how the hands are played. One such game for poker is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,839,731, Method and Apparatus for Playing a Casino Game. Another such game for blackjack is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/867,019, Method of Playing a Blackjack-type Casino Card Game. Another such game for pai gow is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/890,445, Method of Playing a Pai Gow-type Game*

Ex. 1001, 2:52–67 (emphasis added). Further, the '806 patent acknowledges that games with bonus wagering and bonus bets were also well-known in the art. The '806 patent teaches that

*Many casino table games offer bonus bets or jackpots where players may wager on occurrences that do not affect the outcome of the basic game. These types of bonus bets and jackpots are popular with players. An example of such a bonus bet is the game “21+3” disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,012,719. The game is a standard blackjack game where the player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on whether or not a three-card poker hand made of the player’s first two cards and the dealer’s face up card is of a certain rank. Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player’s hand is compared to the banker’s hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player’s hand.*

Ex. 1001, 1:27–40 (emphasis added). In view of this disclosure, we determine that the '806 patent expressly acknowledges that any allegedly

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

inventive concepts involving (a) placing a bonus wager; (b) dealing out cards to each player; (c) forming the bonus hand; (d) identifying a winning player; and (e) paying the winning player were merely well-understood, conventional, and routine steps for playing a card game.<sup>8</sup>

Nonetheless, even if the foregoing statements in the '806 patent do not amount to such an admission, we further determine that the steps of “(c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands” and “(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player” cannot provide an inventive concept or add significantly more than the abstract idea itself to claim 1. *See* PO Resp. 18. According to Patent Owner, “[t]hese elements are significantly more than a skilled artisan would consider well-understood, routine, and conventional in

---

<sup>8</sup> In the Memorandum on Changes in Examination Procedure Pertaining to Subject Matter Eligibility, Recent Subject Matter Eligibility Decision (*Berkheimer v. HP, Inc.*) (Apr. 19, 2018) (“*Berkheimer* Memo”), the Office instructs that “[i]n a step 2B analysis, an additional element (or combination of elements) is not well-understood, routine or conventional unless the examiner finds, and expressly supports a rejection in writing with, one or more of the following:” (1) a “citation to an express statement in the specification or to a statement made by an applicant during prosecution that demonstrates the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s)”; (2) a “citation to one or more of the court decisions discussed in MPEP § 2106.05(d)(II) as noting the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s)”; (3) a “citation to a publication that demonstrates the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s)”; and (4) a “statement that the examiner is taking official notice of the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s).” (emphasis added). The *Berkheimer* Memo is available at: <https://www.uspto.gov/sites/default/files/documents/memo-berkheimer-20180419.PDF>.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

2004.” Sur. 5. Mr. Feola also testifies “[m]y invention has the ability to enhance[] games such as poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, and pai gow poker by allowing bonus bets based on combining dealer cards and player cards.” Ex. 2011 ¶ 3. We are unpersuaded by these contentions.

Even if we were to credit Mr. Feola’s testimony that his invention can enhance various casino games, each of steps of claim 1, including Step C and Step D relied upon by Patent Owner to argue the claims add “significantly more” than just the abstract idea, are part of the rules of the wagering game using a generic deck of cards. *See* Ex. 1001, 6:60–7:4; 3:1–8. The wagering game claimed in *Smith*, reciting rules for a wagering game that use a *standard deck of cards*, was held to be an abstract idea. *Smith*, 815 F.3d 819.

Thus, Step C and Step D, as rules for gameplay, are themselves an integral part of the abstract idea. Any purported improvement or significance asserted by Patent Owner is, therefore, based only on the abstract ideas embodied by these claim steps (i.e., additional rules for playing a bonus wagering game). However, it is well-established that the abstract idea or the combination of abstract ideas (e.g., multiple rules) cannot supply the inventive concept for patent-eligibility. *See ChargePoint, Inc. v. SemaConnect, Inc.*, 920 F.3d 759, 774 (Fed. Cir. 2019) (citations omitted) (“[A] claimed invention’s use of the ineligible concept to which it is directed cannot supply the inventive concept that renders the invention ‘significantly more’ than that ineligible concept.”).

Patent Owner’s reliance on the Examiner’s reasons for allowance does not alter our determination. *See* Ex. 2008, 29. Patent Owner contends that

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

the Examiner's allowance of claims over the closest prior art during prosecution indicates that Step C and Step D of claim 1 were not well-understood, conventional, or routine in 2004. Sur. 5. In the Notice of Allowance, the Examiner stated that

Patentability has been found because the prior art fails to suggest or show the combination as set forth in the independent claim 1 including the formation of the bonus hand to be used for game play. This requirement is not seen or fairly suggested by the prior art of record.

The closest prior art of reference was Malcolm [U.S. Patent Pub. 2003/0122305 A1]. His teachings however fail to anticipate or render obvious applicant's invention.

Ex. 2008, 29.

The foregoing statements in the Examiner's reasons for allowance are directed to novelty and nonobviousness, not eligibility. But the fact that the claims may be novel and nonobvious, thereby meeting the patentability requirements of § 102 and § 103, has no bearing on whether the challenged claims are patent-eligible under § 101. *Affinity Labs of Texas, LLC v. DirecTV, LLC*, 838 F.3d 1253, 1263 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (novelty “does not avoid the problem of abstractness”); *Genetic Techs. Ltd. v. Merial LLC*, 818 F.3d 1369, 1376 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“[A] claim directed to a newly discovered law of nature (or natural phenomenon or abstract idea) cannot rely on the novelty of that discovery for the inventive concept necessary for patent eligibility.”); *buySAFE, Inc. v. Google, Inc.*, 765 F.3d 1350, 1352 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (abstract ideas are unpatentable “no matter how ‘[g]roundbreaking, innovative, or even brilliant’” they may be). Further, Patent Owner's reliance on the disclosure of the “Malcolm” reference (*see* PO Resp. 16–17) is inconsistent with the '806 patent, which teaches that it was well-

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

understood, routine, and conventional for standard games using standard card decks, such as blackjack, to include bonus wagering on bonus bets. *See* Ex. 1001, 1:26–40. In other words, including rules for playing a bonus wagering game with a deck of cards was a well-understood, routine, conventional practice in casino games. *See id.*

Further, we do not find that Petitioner’s alleged failure to address the level of ordinary skill in the art makes a substantive difference in this case. *See* PO Resp. 9. The Federal Circuit has held that “[t]he § 101 inquiry ‘may contain underlying factual issues.’” *Mortg. Grader, Inc. v. First Choice Loan Servs. Inc.*, 811 F.3d 1314, 1325 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (quoting *Accenture Glob. Servs., GmbH v. Guidewire Software, Inc.*, 728 F.3d 1336, 1341 (Fed. Cir. 2013)). The Federal Circuit also has explained that “not every § 101 determination contains genuine disputes over the underlying facts material to the § 101 inquiry.” *Berkheimer*, 881 F.3d at 1368. Here, Petitioner has affirmatively agreed that Patent Owner’s proposed level of ordinary skill is correct. *See* Tr. Tr. 5:17–18:1. While there may be other disputes between the parties, there is no factual dispute regarding the level of ordinary skill in the art. Thus, we do not find that *Berkheimer* mandates that the Petitioner must provide an expert declaration or other evidence to address an undisputed skill level in this § 101 inquiry. *See* PO Resp. 9.

Further, even if we credit the testimony of Patent Owner’s expert (*see* Exs. 2007, 2011) in the absence of expert testimony from Petitioner, the fact remains that each of the steps of claim 1, including Step C and Step D, are part of the rules of the wagering game using a generic deck of cards. *See* Ex. 1001, 6:60–7:4, 3:1–8. “It has been clear since *Alice* that a claimed

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

invention's use of the ineligible concept to which it is directed cannot supply the inventive concept that renders the invention 'significantly more' than that ineligible concept." *BSG Tech LLC v. Buyseasons, Inc.*, 899 F.3d 1281, 1290 (Fed. Cir. 2018). In short, a claim's inventive concept cannot be the abstract idea itself.

Next, we are not persuaded that the claims recite "significantly more" based on the purported commercial success of Patent Owner's game. As mentioned, "[c]ommercial success is not necessarily a proxy for an improvement in a technology nor does it necessarily indicate that claims were drawn to patent eligible subject matter." *Versata Dev. Grp.*, 793 F.3d at 1335. The challenged claims explicitly recite features that are certain methods of organizing human activity (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people (following rules)). Based on the complete record, Patent Owner has not explained why the license agreement, settlement, and purported success of casino games should change our reading of the express limitations in the challenged claims. *See* PO Resp. 19.

Additionally, for the reasons discussed previously, we determine that *Smith* is binding and controlling case law. The procedural posture (i.e., *ex parte* appeal), evidentiary record, and issue date of the decision (*see* Sur. 6–8) do not materially distinguish *Smith* from the instant proceeding. *See supra* Section II.H.2.c.

We further determine that the limitations of dependent claims 2–12 are additional rules for playing a bonus wagering game, which are themselves abstract ideas that cannot supply an inventive concept.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Dependent claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9 recite rules regarding how the bonus hand is formed. Dependent claims 3 and 6 recite rules regarding the plurality of hands. Dependent claims 10–12 recite rules regarding how the bonus wager/payout is paid. These limitations, viewed individually or in combination, are additional well-understood, routine, conventional activities for playing a card game (e.g., forming hands and paying winner). *See* Ex. 1001, 1:26–40. 2:52–67. Patent Owner does not address dependent claims 2–12 separately from claim 1. Thus, based on the complete record, we determine that the recited elements of claims 1–12 are nothing more than well-understood, routine, and conventional steps in playing a bonus wagering game.

### III. CONCLUSION

Petitioner has met its burden of demonstrating by a preponderance of the evidence that claims 1–12 of the '806 patent are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101.

### IV. CONTINGENT MOTION TO AMEND

In its Motion to Amend, Patent Owner requests that we cancel claims 3–8 of the '806 patent and replace them with proposed, substitute claims 13–18. Mot. Amend 3–6. This Motion is contingent on our determination that claims 3–8 are unpatentable under § 101. *Id.* at 7.

In reviewing a motion to amend, we consider whether the motion meets the statutory and regulatory requirements set forth in 35 U.S.C. § 326(d) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.221. *See Lectrosonics, Inc. v. Zaxcom, Inc.*, Case IPR2018-01129 (PTAB Feb. 25, 2019) (Paper 15) (precedential). That is, the patent owner must demonstrate the following: (1) the amendment

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent 7,325,806 B1

responds to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial; (2) the amendment does not seek to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent or introduce new subject matter; (3) the amendment proposes a reasonable number of substitute claims; and (4) the proposed claims are supported in the original disclosure of the patent. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 326(d); 37 C.F.R. § 42.221; *see also Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 4–8. The patent owner, however, “does not bear the burden of persuasion to demonstrate the patentability of [the proposed] substitute claims.” *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 4 (citing *Aqua Prods., Inc. v. Matal*, 872 F.3d 1290 (Fed. Cir. 2017); *Bosch Auto. Serv. Sols. LLC v. Iancu*, 878 F.3d 1027 (Fed. Cir. 2017)). “Rather, as a result of the current state of the law and [U.S. Patent and Trademark Office] rules and guidance, the burden of persuasion will ordinarily lie with the petitioner to show that any proposed substitute claims are unpatentable by a preponderance of the evidence.” *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 4.

A. *Reasonable Number of Substitute Claims*

Initially, we determine that Patent Owner proposes a single substitute claim for each cancelled claim 3–8, and therefore meets this requirement. Mot. Amend 5–6. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 42.221(a)(3) (establishing a rebuttable presumption that one substitute claim is needed to replace each challenged claim). A table showing the proposed substitute claims and replaced original claims is as follows:

Original Claim	Substitute Claim
3	13
4	14

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent 7,325,806 B1

5	15
6	16
7	17
8	18

*B. Proposed Substitute Independent Claims 13 and 16*

In its Motion to Amend, Patent Owner requests that we cancel original claims 3 and 6, and replace these with proposed, substitute claims 13 and 16 respectively. Mot. Amend. 5. Claims 13 and 16 recite similar subject matter:

13. (Substitute for claim 3) The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands, and the method further comprises the steps of providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.

16. (Substitute for claim 6) The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands and at least one banker hand, and the method further comprises the steps of providing a video screen on which said player hands and said at least one banker hand are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.

Mot. Amend 5.

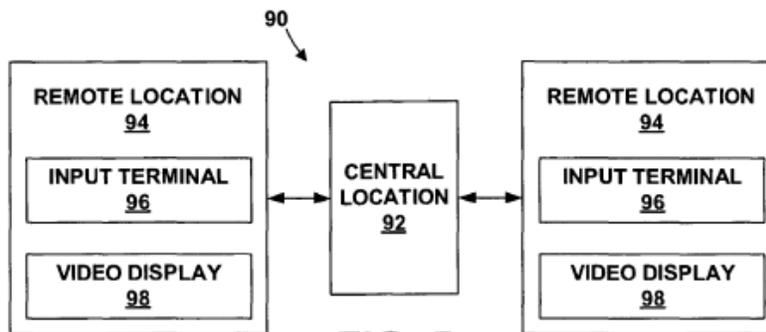
Patent Owner asserts that proposed substitute claims 13 and 16 do not enlarge the scope of the originally issued claims 1–12, are supported by the specification, and are responsive to the grounds of unpatentability involved in the proceeding. *Id.* at 8–9. Given the similarity of the amendments, we discuss substitute claim 13 below as representative of the proposed amendments in both claims 13 and 16.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*1. New Matter*

In the Motion, Patent Owner asserts that these limitations are supported by the Specification of the '806 patent. Mot. Amend 8–9 (citing Ex. 1001, 6:3–41, Figs. 5–6). Patent Owner has not provided any citation to the original disclosure of U.S. Patent Application No. 10/913,097 (“the '097 Application”), from which the '806 patent issued. See Ex. 2008, 107–131.

Nonetheless, we observe that the cited sections of the '806 patent appear in the original disclosure of the '097 Application. The original disclosure includes Figures 5 and 6 below:



**FIG. 5**

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent 7,325,806 B1

Figure 5 shows a block diagram of a keno-style system. Ex. 2008, 110.

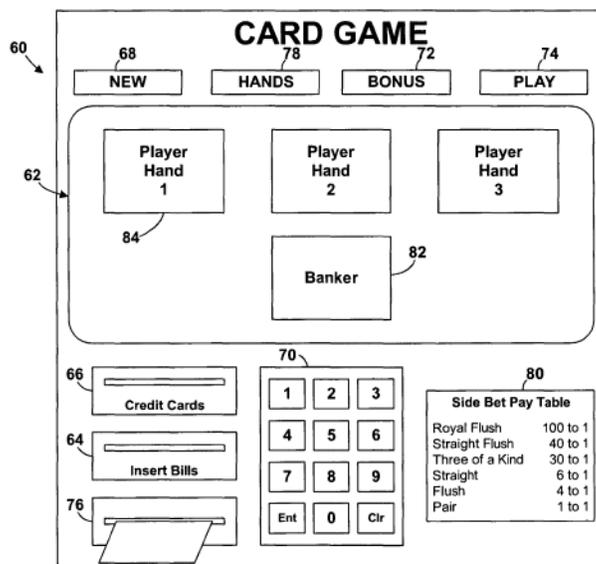


FIG. 6

Fig. 6 shows a video screen implementing the game embodiment of Figure 1. *Id.* The '097 Application further teaches that

[w]ith individual machines, an example of which is shown in Fig. 6, implementing the embodiment of Fig. 1, each player has her own terminal 60. *An example is a video machine at a gaming establishment.* The banker hand 82 and player hands 84 are displayed on the player's video screen 62. *Prior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66.* The player presses the NEW button 68 and indicates the amount to wager for the game, typically by entering an amount on the keypad 70. *The player begins a game by pressing the HANDS button 78 and entering the player hands on which the player wishes to wager using the keypad 70 or a touch screen 62.* *If the player wishes to play the bonus wager, she presses the BONUS button 72 and indicates the amount to wager.* The player presses the PLAY button 74 to deal the cards. If the player played the bonus wager, the rank of the bonus hand comprised of the face up cards of the player hands is compared to the table 80 of ranked hands for the bonus wager. If the bonus

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

hand rank is in the table 80, the winning amount is credited to the player and may be printed on a voucher 76 for payment by a cashier or they may be paid in coins or other monetary tokens by the terminal itself. After the bonus wager is settled, the base game is completed and any winnings are paid out in the same fashion.

Ex. 2008, 120–121 (emphasis added). Based on this disclosure, we determine that the amendments proposed in substitute claim 13 are supported by the '097 Application.

## 2. *Enlarging Claim Scope*

As stated in 35 U.S.C. § 316(d)(3), an “amendment . . . may not enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent.” *See also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.221(a)(2)(ii) (“A motion to amend may be denied where . . . [t]he amendment seeks to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent.”). “A substitute claim will meet the requirements of § 42.221(a)(2)(i) and (ii) if it narrows the scope of at least one claim of the patent, for example, the challenged claim it replaces, in a way that is responsive to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial. *Lectrosonics Inc.*, slip op. at 6–7.

We determine that this requirement has been satisfied because substitute claim 13 depends from original cancelled claim 1 and further narrows the scope of original cancelled claim 1 by reciting the “steps of providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.” *See* Mot. Amend 5.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*3. Responding to a Ground of Unpatentability*

37 C.F.R. § 42.221(a)(2)(i) states that “[a] motion to amend may be denied where . . . [t]he amendment does not respond to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial.”

In the Motion, Patent Owner does not provide a detailed explanation as to how the proposed amendments in substitute claim 13 respond to a ground of unpatentability. *See* Mot. Amend. 8. Patent Owner states:

The amendments add elements to claims 13 and 16 that are undisputedly physical in nature, eliminating any assertions that the claims are abstract matter.

Mot. Amend 9. Nevertheless, in Patent Owner’s Reply to Petitioner’s Opposition, Patent Owner provides responsive arguments that address § 101. Reply Amend 5–10.

In considering the motion, the entirety of the record is reviewed to determine whether a patent owner’s amendments respond to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial. *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. 5–6. Based on the entirety of the record, including Patent Owner’s Reply, we determine that Patent Owner has sufficiently articulated its position for why the proposed amendment is responsive to the § 101 ground of unpatentability.

*4. § 101 Eligibility of Proposed Substitute Claims 13 and 16*

*a. Guidance, Step 1*

Under the *Guidance*, we first must determine “whether the claim is to a statutory category (Step 1).” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. Here, we determine substitute claim 13 depends from original claim 1 and recites a statutory process, namely the process of playing a game with a deck of cards. *See* Mot. Amend 5.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*b. Guidance Step 2A, Prong 1: Whether Challenged Claims Recite an Abstract Idea*

As discussed above, under Guidance Step 2A, Prong 1, we must determine whether the claims recite an abstract idea. Petitioner argues that the proposed amendment does not add anything or modify the abstract idea underlying the issued claims of the '806 patent. Opp. Amend 13.

Patent Owner responds that substitute claim 13 recites a “video screen” and a “wager input mechanism,” which are machines that do not fit into the three judicial exceptions listed in the *Guidance*. Reply Amend 6 (“[T]he claims do not cover a mathematical concept, nor certain methods of organizing human behavior, nor mental processes.”).

Based on the entirety of the record, we agree with Petitioner that substitute claim 13 continues to recite rules for playing a wagering game. This is because proposed substitute claim 13 depends from original claim 1 and necessarily includes all the limitations recited in claim 1. Thus, claim 13 expressly recites a “method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps (i.e., rules) of “(a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager”; “(b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands”; “(c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands”; (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank”; and “(e) paying said winning player a payout.” *See* Ex. 1001, 6:61–7:4. As discussed above with respect to original claim, these limitations recite a set of rules for playing a bonus wagering game, which is a method of organizing human activity that may be understood as both a fundamental economic practice and rules for playing games, and thus

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

an abstract idea. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818; *Guldenaar*, 911 F.3d at 1160; *see also Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52 (identifying managing personal behavior or relationships/interactions between people (including following rules) as a certain method of organizing human activity considered to be an abstract idea).

Further, the additional limitation “wherein said hands are player hands” recited in substitute claim 13 also appeared in original claim 3. This limitation, as discussed above, recites an additional rule for gameplay, specifically that the “plurality of hands” recited in original claim 1 are “player hands.” Mot. Amend 5. Thus, we consider this limitation to be another rule for playing a game that falls within certain methods of organizing human activity (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people (following rules)).

Having identified the abstract idea recited in substitute claim 13, we turn now to Step 2A, Prong 2 of *Guidance* to discuss in detail whether the additional limitations of a “video screen” and “wager input mechanism” integrate the judicial exception into a practical application.

*c. Guidance Step 2A, Prong 2: Whether Challenged Claims Integrate the Abstract Idea into a Practical Application*

Substitute claim 13 recites “the method further comprises the steps of providing a *video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed* and providing a *wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.*” Mot. Amend 2 (emphasis added).

Again, consistent with Supreme Court and Federal Circuit precedent, the *Guidance* provides that a claim reciting an abstract idea must be further

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

analyzed to determine whether the recited judicial exception is integrated into a practical application of that exception. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. “A claim that integrates a judicial exception into a practical application will apply, rely on, or use the judicial exception in a manner that imposes a meaningful limit on the judicial exception, such that the claim is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the judicial exception.” *Id.* at 53. However, “[m]erely includ[ing] instructions to implement an abstract idea on a computer” and “merely us[ing] a computer as a tool to perform an abstract idea” are not “practical applications” under Step 2A, Prong 2. *Id.* at 55.

Petitioner asserts that the substitute claims do not improve the functioning of a computer or an existing technological process because the substitute claims introduce generic physical components for a generic environment in which to carry out the abstract idea. Opp. Amend 14 (citing *TLI*, 823 F.3d at 611).

In its Reply, Patent Owner asserts that “the creation of the bonus hand with cards from other hands, represents an improvement to a device, such as a video poker type machine, providing an improved gaming experience on the device.” Reply Amend 8. Patent Owner further contends that the “wager input mechanism” is a special purpose device closely tied to the game outlined in the claim elements. Reply Amend 7 (citing Ex. 1001, 6:2, 6:21–23, Fig. 6. According to Patent Owner, “only a small subset of computing machines have ‘wager input mechanisms.’” Reply Amend 8 (citing Ex. 2013).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

In considering Patent Owner’s arguments, we find instructive our reviewing Court’s guidance in *Enfish*, 822 F.3d 1327. In *Enfish*, the Federal Circuit articulated that *Alice*, Step 1, inquires “whether the focus of the claims is on the specific asserted improvement in computer capabilities (i.e., the self-referential table for a computer database) or, instead, on a process that qualifies as an ‘abstract idea’ for which computers are invoked merely as a tool.” *Enfish*, 822 F.3d at 1335–36 (citing *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 217, 220–24). The Federal Circuit rejected a § 101 challenge because the claims “are directed to a specific improvement to the way computers operate, embodied in the self-referential table.” *Id.* at 1336. The Federal Circuit further commented that

we are not faced with a situation where general-purpose computer components are added post-hoc to a fundamental economic practice or mathematical equation. Rather, the claims are directed to a specific implementation of a solution to a problem in the software arts.

*Id.* at 1339; *see Elec. Power*, 830 F.3d at 1354 (characterizing the claims in *Enfish* as improving how computers carry out the “basic functions of storage and retrieval of data”).

Turning to substitute claim 13, we observe that the recited process is quite unlike the “self-referential table,” which was a “specific improvement to the way computers operate,” held to be not abstract in *Enfish*, 822 F.3d at 1336, and the “specific asserted improvement in computer animation, i.e., the automatic use of rules of a particular type” held to be not abstract in *McRO*, 837 F.3d at 1314. With regard to the “video screen,” substitute claim 13 only recites the step of “providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed.” Substitute claim 13 does not recite

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

any additional limitation regarding the video screen that would, for example, indicate a specific improvement to the way video screens operate, i.e., how video screens display information.

The Specification also does not teach any improvement to video screens. For example, Figure 6 of the '806 patent shows a video machine with video screen 62 with player hands 84 and banker hand 82. *See* Ex. 1001, 2:42–43. In describing the video screen, the '806 patent generally states “[t]he banker hand 82 and player hands 84 are displayed on the player’s video screen 62.” Ex. 1001, 6:19–21. Similarly, the '806 patent teaches, with regard to Figure 5, that “[a]s the game is being played, the hands are displayed on a video screen 98 or matrix of video screens visible to the players at the remote location 94 from information received from the central location 92.” *Id.* at 6:11–15. The '806 patent further contemplates that the game may be played using video poker-type machines, personal computers, hand-held devices, slot machines, over an on-line computer network.” *Id.* at 2:14–19. Throughout these passages, and the entire Specification, the '806 patent does not teach that the “video screen” is anything beyond a general purpose/generic component that displays content. Indeed, the '806 patent does not suggest that the video screen is improved from a technical perspective, or that it would operate differently than it otherwise could. *ChargePoint*, 920 F.3d at 768 (“Notably, however, the specification never suggests that the charging station itself is improved from a technical perspective, or that it would operate differently than it otherwise could.”).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Moreover, we note that Patent Owner does not dispute that the “video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed” is a general purpose component. In response to the question of whether a video screen is well-known in the gaming industry, Patent Owner’s counsel answered, “I’m not going to argue on the video screen. I want to stick to the wager input mechanism.” Tr. 25:11–14; *see id.* at 46:23–47:1.

Additionally, we find that substitute claim 13 also does not recite a “wager input mechanism” that is a special purpose device. *See Reply Amend 7.* Substitute claim 13 recites “providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.” Substitute claim 13 does not recite any additional limitation regarding the “wager input mechanism” other than that it allows the placement of the bonus wager.

Although the term “wager input mechanism” is not used in the Specification, the ’806 patent describes several possibilities for inputting wagers. Referring to Figure 5, the ’806 patent teaches that in keno-style lottery system 90, a player makes her choice of player hands at remote location 94 by marking a slip of paper with the player hands she wishes to wager on, whether or not she wishes to play the bonus wager, and the wager amounts. Ex. 1001, 5:63–7:1. The player then “gives the slip to a clerk with the amount of the wager, who then *scans the slip into a terminal 96* that sends the choices to a central location 92.” *Id.* at 6:1–3 (emphasis added). The ’806 patent states that “[a]lternatively, *choices can be made from keys on a keyboard, keys on a key grid, or by boxes on a touch screen grid.*” *Id.* at 6:3–5 (emphasis added). Referring to Figure 6, the ’806 patent further teaches that each player has her own terminal 60 or video machine. *Id.* at

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent 7,325,806 B1

6:16–19. “Prior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a *money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66.*” *Id.* at 6:21–23 (emphasis added). With the video machine, the “player presses the NEW button 68 and indicates the amount to wager for the game, typically by *entering an amount on the keypad 70.*” *Id.* at 6:24–26 (emphasis added). Additionally, “[i]f the player wishes to play the bonus wager, she presses the *BONUS button 72 and indicates the amount to wager.*” *Id.* at 6:29–31 (emphasis added). In sum, the ’806 patent describes scanners, keyboards, keys on a key grid, boxes on a touch screen, as well as money readers and card readers as possible wager input mechanisms for placing a bonus wager.

Patent Owner argues that keypads and keyboards are not wager input mechanisms because the “choices” described in columns 5 and 6 of the ’806 patent are not the same as wager input because no money is involved. *See Tr. 27:14–22.* Patent Owner contends that the player

[g]ives the [keno] slip to a terminal, which can be read or alternatively the choices – the choices being which ones are the keno game are being chosen could be entered into the keyboard. That puts a context around that alternatively choices. It’s entering for a keno game which numbers you want to play on that card. That’s not the wager input. And the wager input mechanism has to be the card player and the insert of the bills.

*Id.* at 40:22–41:4.

We disagree with Patent Owner. The ’806 patent clearly describes the use of a keyboard or keypad as an alternative to scanning a slip of paper that contains the wager amount. Ex. 1001, 6:1–6. The ’806 patent states that the player “gives the slip to a clerk *with the amount of the wager*, who then scans the slip into a terminal 96 that sends the choices to a central location

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

92.” *Id.* at 6:1–3 (emphasis added). The ’806 patent further states that “[a]lternatively, *choices can be made from keys on a keyboard, keys on a key grid, or by boxes on a touch screen grid.*” *Id.* at 6:3–5 (emphasis added). The ’806 patent does not distinguish between the types of choices that may be made on the slip of paper versus through a keyboard or keypad. Additionally, the ’806 patent teaches that the player receives a receipt such as an indication on a private terminal, *indicating the hand or hands chosen for the game and if the bonus wager is played.* *Id.* at 6:8–11 (emphasis added). In other words, the receipt indicates the “choices” made by the player, including “if the bonus wager is played.” *See id.*

Further, we are not persuaded by Patent Owner that the ’806 patent distinguishes wager input from wager amount. *See* Tr. 43:21–44:13. Patent Owner takes the position that the insertion of cash into the money reader or card into the card reader is the *input* of wagers and the keys on the keypad 70 are used to enter the wager *amount.* *Id.* The ’806 patent does not provide such a distinction between these terms. For example, the ’806 patent teaches “[p]rior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66.” Ex. 1001, 6:21–23. The ’806 patent does not refer to the money or card reader as receiving or inputting a wager. Instead, the term “wager” appears later when the player presses NEW button 68 or BONUS button 72 to indicate the amount to wager. *Id.* at 6:24–31.

Additionally, Patent Owner’s arguments at the oral hearing are contradicted by its position in its briefs. In Patent Owner’s briefs, it took the position that the paper slip scanner is a “wager input mechanism,”

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

specifically “[t]he ‘wager input mechanism is found throughout the specification, for instance see the ’806 patent in column 6, line 2 ‘. . . scans the slip into the terminal 96 . . . .’ Reply Amend 7. That disclosure teaches that the slip of paper contains “the amount of the wager.” Ex. 1001, 5:64–6:3 (“[A] player typically makes her choice of player hands at a remote location 94 by *marking a slip of paper with the player hands she wishes to wager on, whether or not she wishes to play the bonus wager, and the wager amounts. She gives the slip to a clerk with the amount of the wager, who then scans the slip into a terminal 96 that sends the choices to a central location 92.*”) (emphasis added). In short, Patent Owner relies on the scanning of slips containing wager *amounts* as an example of a “wager input mechanism,” even though, arguably, no cash, credit card, or money has been inserted into the scanner. Thus, based on the complete record, we determine that the term “wager input mechanism” includes general purpose computer components, such as a keyboard or keypad, which are generic computer tools for the input of the bonus wager.

Generic components such as the video screen and keyboard or keypad (i.e., wager input mechanism) do not integrate the judicial exception of substitute claim 13 in a practical application. As our reviewing court has observed, “after *Alice*, there can remain no doubt: recitation of generic computer limitations does not make an otherwise ineligible claim patent-eligible.” *DDR*, 773 F.3d at 1256 (citing *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 223).

Moreover, even assuming the recited “wage input mechanism” may be limited to money/card readers, we are not persuaded the addition of a money/card reader integrates the abstract idea into a practical application.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*See* Reply Amend 8–9. Patent Owner does not dispute that card/money readers are generic or general purpose computer components. *See generally* Reply Amend 8; *see* Tr. 26:13–20. Patent Owner contends, instead, that a general purpose computer did not have card/money readers. Tr. 26:7–12; Reply Amend 8 (“Only a small subset of computer machines have ‘wager input mechanisms.’”). However, substitute claim 13, a method claim, does not require the “wager input mechanism” to be part of a computer, processor, other computer component, or video gaming machine. Substitute claim 13 recites the step of “providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed,” which broadly covers providing a standalone generic card/money reader that is not necessarily part of a general purpose computer.

For the foregoing reasons, based on the complete record, we determine that additional elements (“video screen” and “wage input mechanism”) of substitute claim 13, individually or in combination, are generic computer elements and are invoked merely as a tool for carrying out the rules of bonus wagering game. This is not sufficient to integrate the judicial exception into a practical application. *See Credit Acceptance Corp. v. Westlake Svcs.*, 859 F.3d 1044, 1055 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (finding abstract the claims for using a computer as a tool to process an application for financing a purchase).

Thus, based on our consideration of *Guidance*, Step 2A (Prongs 1 and 2), we determine that substitute claim 13 is directed to an abstract idea.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*d. Guidance, Step 2B: Whether Challenged Claims Contain an Inventive Concept*

Patent Owner argues that substitute claim 13 is significantly more than what was well-understood, routine, and conventional to a skilled artisan at the time of the invention based on arguments made in its Patent Owner's Response to the Petition and in the Sur-Reply. Reply Amend 10. Setting aside whether Patent Owner may properly incorporate by reference arguments from its other briefs in this manner, we are not persuaded by Patent Owner's arguments for the reasons discussed previously. *See supra* Section II.H.

Further, we reiterate that “[a]bstract ideas, including a set of rules for a game, may be patent-eligible if they contain an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819 (citing *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357). But appending purely conventional steps to an abstract idea does not supply a sufficiently inventive concept. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357–58. And, per the *Guidance*, we consider whether an additional element or combination of elements: (1) “[a]dds a specific limitation or combination of limitations that are not well-understood, routine, conventional activity in the field, which is indicative that an inventive concept may be present;” or (2) “simply appends well-understood, routine, conventional activities previously known to the industry, specified at a high level of generality, to the judicial exception, which is indicative that an inventive concept may not be present.” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 56.

Substitute claim 13 appends purely conventional steps of “providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed and

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.” Mot. Amend 5. Patent Owner concedes that displaying player hands on a video screen was well-known in the gaming industry at the time of the invention. Tr. 25:11–14, 42:23–47:1. Further, Patent Owner agreed at the oral hearing that every video poker machine in 2004 had a way to input money whether through credit card or cash. *Id.* at 45:18–46:1. As such, the dispute between the parties is focused on whether it was well-known, conventional, or routine for a video gambling machine to include a *card/money reader* as a particular type of “wager input mechanism.” *See id.* at 46:2–7. Patent Owner’s argument is based on a narrow reading of “wager input mechanism” that does not comport with the Specification, as discussed in detail above. “Wager input mechanism” includes keyboards, keypads, and touch screens in addition to card/money readers. There is no genuine dispute on this issue and we find that these are conventional, well-known, and routine computer components that do not add significantly more to the claimed elements. *See Voter Verified, Inc. v. Election Sys. & Software LLC*, 887 F.3d 1376, 1386 (Fed. Cir. 2018) (noting that a keyboard is a standard computer component, which is “not sufficient to transform abstract claims into patent-eligible subject matter”). Moreover, substitute claim 13 is a method claim that does not recite a video gaming machine with a wager input mechanism. Mot. Amend 5. The substitute claim requires the step of providing a “wager input mechanism,” which is satisfied by providing a card/money reader that is not necessarily part of a video gaming machine or any other computer.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Accordingly, we determine that the additional limitations of substitute claim 13, viewed individually or in combination, recite well-understood, routine, conventional steps and components for playing a wagering game. The same applies to substitute claim 16, which is nearly identical to substitute claim 13 except that the video screen displays player hands and at least one banker hand. Mot. Amend 5.

*C. Proposed Substitute Claims 14, 15, 17, and 18*

Patent Owner asserts that proposed substitute claims 14, 15, 17, and 18 do not enlarge the scope of the originally issued claims 1–12, are supported by the specification, and are responsive to the grounds of unpatentability involved in the proceeding. Mot. Amend. 8–9. Based on the entirety of the record, we agree that Patent Owner has satisfied the procedural requirements under 35 U.S.C. § 326(d) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.221.

With regard to § 101 eligibility of proposed substitute claims 14, 15, 17, and 18, Patent Owner does not make additional arguments separate from those discussed above for substitute claims 13 and 16. Mot. Amend 6–9; Reply Amend 5–10. Further, the only proposed amendments amend original claims 4 and 5 to depend from substitute claim 13, and original claims 7 and 8 to depend from claims 17 and 18. Mot. Amend 5. Therefore, we determine that the recited elements of substitute claims 14, 15, 17, and 18 are unpatentable by a preponderance of the evidence, under § 101, for the same reasons discussed for substitute claims 13 and 16.

## V. CONCLUSION

Accordingly, Petitioner has met its burden of demonstrating that the '806 patent is a covered business method patent eligible for review.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

Petitioner has also met its burden of demonstrating by a preponderance of the evidence that claims 1–12 of the '806 patent are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Further, based on the entirety of the record, we determine that proposed substitute claims 13–18 are unpatentable by a preponderance of the evidence based on 35 U.S.C. § 101.

This is a Final Written Decision of the Board under 35 U.S.C. § 328(a). Parties to the proceeding seeking judicial review of this decision must comply with the notice and service requirements of 37 C.F.R. § 90.2.

## VI. ORDER

For the reasons given, it is:

ORDERED that claims 1–12 of the '806 patent are unpatentable; and  
FURTHER ORDERED that Patent Owner's Motion to Amend is  
denied.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

For PETITIONER:

Gene Lee  
PERKINS COIE LLP  
lee-ptab@perkinscoie.com

For PATENT OWNER:

Richard Baker  
NEW ENGLAND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY, LLC  
rbaker@newenglandip.com

Steven Martin  
ALTMAN & MARTIN  
smartin@altmartlaw.com

[Trials@uspto.gov](mailto:Trials@uspto.gov)  
571-272-7822

Paper 52  
Entered: November 20, 2019

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

---

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

---

BALLY GAMING, INC., DBA BALLY TECHNOLOGIES,  
Petitioner,

v.

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.  
Patent Owner.

---

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

---

Before FRANCES L. IPPOLITO, KEVIN W. CHERRY, and  
CHRISTOPHER G. PAULRAJ, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

IPPOLITO, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

DECISION

*Denying Request on Rehearing of Final Written Decision Determining that  
Challenged Claims are Unpatentable  
37 C.F.R. § 42.71(d)*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

## I. INTRODUCTION

Patent Owner filed a Request for Rehearing (Paper 51, “Reh’g Req.” or “Rehearing Request”) asserting that in the Final Written Decision (Paper 50, “FWD”), the Board “misapprehended or overlooked key portions of the Record.” Reh’g Req. 1. In that Final Written Decision, we determined that claims 1–12 (“instituted claims”) of U.S. Patent No. 7,325,806 B1 (Ex. 1001, “the ’806 patent”) are unpatentable. FWD 3, 66.

Under 37 C.F.R. § 42.71(d), “[t]he burden of showing a decision should be modified lies with the party challenging the decision. The request must specifically identify all matters the party believes the Board misapprehended or overlooked, and the place where each matter was previously addressed in a motion, opposition, or a reply.”

For the reasons provided below, we deny Patent Owner’s Request for Rehearing.

## II. ANALYSIS

### A. *Forum Selection Clause*

Patent Owner contends that it is “clear error” for the Board to refuse to enforce the Forum Selection Clause between the parties because the Board’s decision “overlooks key aspects of the Record.” Reh’g Req. 5. Patent Owner asserts that the FWD and the Decision on Institution (Paper 19) never state that the Forum Selection Clause is invalid or does not apply, and that the “sole assertion in the Decision is that the Patent Owner did not enjoin the USPTO to follow the law.” *Id.* at 6. Patent Owner further contends that the text of the Settlement Agreement (Exhibit 2005) is exclusive and requires that only the Nevada courts can resolve the dispute.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*Id.* (citing Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response (Paper 6, “Prelim. Resp.”) and Patent Owner’s Sur-Reply to the Preliminary Response (Paper 18, “Prelim. Resp. Sur.”)). Additionally, Patent Owner argues that the FWD failed to consider the Supreme Court’s decision in *M/S Bremen v. Zapata Off-Shore Co.*, 407 U.S. 1 (1972) and a district court’s decision in *Callaway Golf Co. v. Acushnet Co.*, 523 F. Supp. 2d 388 (D. Del. 2007). Patent Owner also asserts that the Board should have interpreted the Settlement Agreement and, further, “the USPTO should have required that Bally seek permission from the Nevada District Court to proceed in the PTAB against the plain language of the Settlement Agreement, or denied institution outright. Such permission was never sought, and the institution should never have occurred.” Reh’g Req. 8.

To start, we do not agree with Patent Owner that the rehearing request on this particular issue is timely. Patent Owner has argued that “the institution should never have occurred” and that institution should have been denied outright. Reh’g Req. 8. However, our Decision on Institution (Paper 19, “Dec.”) was entered on June 22, 2018. Any request for rehearing of our determinations regarding the forum selection clause in that Decision should have been filed 14 days from the entry of that decision.

37 C.F.R. § 42.71(d)(1). As we noted in the FWD, after institution of the covered business method patent review (“CBM review”), the parties did not present any additional evidence or arguments regarding the forum selection clause issue. FWD 7 (“In the post-institution briefing, neither party has added arguments or evidence to the record regarding this issue.”). Indeed, the Patent Owner’s Response (Paper 27, “PO Resp.”) and Sur-Reply (Paper

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

42, “Sur.”) and Petitioner’s Reply (Paper 34, “Reply”) did not discuss forum selection. For completeness and clarity of the record, we reiterated our determination in the Decision on Institution that

[b]ased on the preliminary record, we observed that Patent Owner had not identified any controlling authority—such as by statute, rule, or binding precedent—that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. Dec. 8–11. For example, section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we noted that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). *Id.* We did not agree with Patent Owner that any portion of chapter 32, § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, explicitly provides for a contractual estoppel defense. *See id. In the post-institution briefing, neither party has added arguments or evidence to the record regarding this issue.*

FWD 7 (emphasis added). Thus, Patent Owner’s quarrel now is one with the past determinations made in the Decision on Institution for which the deadline for rehearing has long expired. Nonetheless, in the interest of maintaining a complete record, we address Patent Owner’s arguments below.

First, Patent Owner mischaracterizes the FWD as relying on the “sole assertion . . . that the Patent Owner did not enjoin the USPTO to follow the law.” Reh’g Req. 6. The FWD (and the Decision on Institution) provided several reasons for our determination, including, as quoted above, that Patent Owner had not identified any controlling authority that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

contractual estoppel. FWD 7. Further, we determined that “[t]he Board is neither bound by the party’s Agreement, nor do we have independent jurisdiction to resolve any contractual dispute between the parties over the forum selection clause in that Agreement.” *Id.* at 7–8. We additionally addressed *Dodocase VR, Inc. v MerchSource, LLC*, No. 17-cv-07088-EDL, 2018 WL 1475289 (N.D. Cal. Mar. 26, 2018), which the Federal Circuit affirmed in *Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*, 767 F. App’x 930, 935–36 (Fed. Cir. 2019) (non-precedential) (collectively referred to as “*Dodocase*”), on the basis that “unlike the facts and procedural posture of that case, we do not have before us any court order requiring the Petition in this proceeding to be withdrawn.” *Id.* at 7. Thus, we are not persuaded that we overlooked any evidence or argument in the record on this basis.

Second, given the particular circumstances before us, we do not agree with Patent Owner that we are or were required to: (1) interpret the Settlement Agreement (Exhibit 2005); (2) determine the forum selection clause is exclusive and requires that only the Nevada courts can resolve the dispute; (3) order Petitioner to seek permission from the Nevada District Court to proceed in the PTAB against the plain language of the Settlement Agreement; or (4) deny institution. *Reh’g Req.* 6–8. This is because, even assuming as Patent Owner argues (*id.* at 6) that we interpret the *exclusive* forum selection clause as being “far broader and more definitive than the forum selection clause in the *Dodocase*,” the fact remains that the decision in the *Dodocase* is inapposite for the reasons we have explained in our FWD. That is, there, the district court ordered the parties to withdraw the petition filed with the Board. *Ex.* 1027, 24. Those facts are very different

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

from the ones before us in the instant proceeding where no decision by a federal district court required the parties to withdraw the petition. Even Patent Owner acknowledges that “[c]urrent case law permits District Courts to enforce venue selection clauses against the PTAB through injunction, making it unlikely that the PTAB will have the opportunity to find any claims in the ‘806 patent unpatentable.” Prelim. Resp. Sur. 5 (emphasis added). In this way, Patent Owner agrees that *Dodocase* stands for the proposition that the *district court*, not the Board, may issue an injunction requiring the parties to withdraw the petition. Yet, no district court injunction was at issue here.

More importantly, Patent Owner, again, has not identified any *controlling* authority that requires the Board to deny institution of a CBM review based on contractual estoppel. The FWD explains that

section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we noted that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). *Id.* We did not agree with Patent Owner that any portion of chapter 32, § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, explicitly provides for a contractual estoppel defense. *See id.*

FWD 7. None of these statutory provisions expressly grant us the authority to enforce contractual obligations between the parties such as by ordering Petitioner to comply with the forum selection clause (e.g., ordering Petitioner to seek permission from the Nevada district court to file a petition), or awarding damages to either party for breach of contract

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

disputes. Thus, the parties are not at liberty to seek from us, nor do we have the capacity to grant, relief that is outside the contours of the statutory authority given by Congress for CBM review. *See Killip v. Office of Pers. Mgmt.*, 991 F.2d 1564, 1569 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (“An agency is but a creature of statute. Any and all authority pursuant to which an agency may act ultimately must be grounded in an express grant from Congress.”).

Additionally, Patent Owner’s reliance on the decisions in *Bremen* and *Callaway* is misplaced. In *Bremen*, the Supreme Court rejected the district court’s ruling that a forum selection clause was unenforceable as a matter of public policy, determined that the lower court had given “far too little weight and effect” to the forum selection clause, upheld the clause, and designated “the London Court of Justice” as the site for all disputes. *Bremen*, 407 U.S. at 8. In doing so, the Supreme Court observed that “[t]he threshold question is whether that court should have exercised its jurisdiction to do more than give effect to the legitimate expectations of the parties, manifested in their freely negotiated agreement, *by specifically enforcing the forum clause.*” *Id.* at 12 (emphasis added). However, as discussed, our CBM review does not seek to resolve contractual disputes or enforce contractual obligations, and is, instead, focused on reviewing the patentability of the challenged claims. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 328(a) (“FINAL WRITTEN DECISION—If a post-grant review is instituted and not dismissed under this chapter, *the Patent Trial and Appeal Board shall issue a final written decision with respect to the patentability of any patent claim challenged by the petitioner and any new claim added under section 326(d)*”) (emphasis added); *see also* 35 U.S.C. § 324(a) (“THRESHOLD.—The Director may not authorize a post-grant

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

review to be instituted unless the Director determines that the information presented in the petition filed under section 321, if such information is not rebutted, would demonstrate that it is more likely than not that at least 1 of the claims challenged in the petition is unpatentable.”). Thus, we are not persuaded that the *Bremen* decision’s discussion of the district court’s review and enforcement of contractual obligations applies in a CBM review where Patent Owner has not shown that the panel has comparable authority to resolve contract disputes.

Next, although *Callaway* is a non-binding district court decision, we nevertheless observe that the circumstances in *Callaway* support our determination. In *Callaway*, the district court reviewed and decided a breach of contract dispute between the parties. The district court determined Acushnet had breached the contract by seeking an *inter partes* reexamination:

[t]he Agreement expressly provides that “[a]ny dispute arising out of or relating to patents” be resolved by the procedures set forth therein, which are “the sole and exclusive procedure[s] for the resolution of any such dispute.” (D.I. 199, ex. 1 at § 19.1) These procedures included mediation and litigation in this district; reexamination proceedings are not listed as a possible alternative and, therefore, are precluded as possible remedies to any disputes involving the Sullivan patents. (*Id.* at §§ 19.5–19.7) There is no need for the court to determine whether an *inter partes* reexamination is a “legal proceeding,” insofar as defendant breached the Agreement in any event: *If it is a legal proceeding, defendant breached by filing a legal proceeding in the wrong forum; if it is not, defendant breached because the Agreement only allows for legal proceedings.*

*Callaway*, 523 F. Supp. 2d at 406–407 (emphasis added, footnotes omitted); *see id.* (“[B]ased on the foregoing discussion, *defendant violated the*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

*Agreement* by filing the *inter partes* reexaminations to contest the validity of the Sullivan patents.”) (emphasis added). The district court granted Callaway’s motion for summary judgment of breach of contract. *Id.* at 407. Again, for a CBM review, the Board does not have the authority to enforce a contract (e.g., ordering a party to perform obligations) or to resolve breach of contract disputes (e.g., determining a breach has occurred). Thus, to the extent that Patent Owner seeks this relief, it must obtain that relief from the district court.<sup>1</sup>

Finally, we are not persuaded that the Petition should have been denied “outright” as Patent Owner proposes. Reh’g Req. 8. Again, Patent Owner has not identified any authority that provides a contractual estoppel defense in a CBM review. Moreover, Congress has demonstrated that it will provide expressly for equitable defenses if desired and has provided for estoppel based on a party’s previous challenge to the same patent. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 325(e). But Congress did not provide for contractual estoppel as a defense to unpatentability in an AIA proceeding.

*B. Covered Business Method Patent Review Standing*

Patent Owner asserts that our FWD ignores a precedential decision in *Global Tel\*Link Corp. v. Securus Technologies, Inc.*, CBM2014-00166, Paper 17 at 7 (PTAB Feb. 6, 2015). Reh’g Req. 10 (“The Decision ignores the *Global Tel\*Link* precedent, cited in the Patent Owners Preliminary Response Sur-Reply at p. 12, and arbitrarily and capriciously finds a charge

---

<sup>1</sup> By granting institution and proceeding to the FWD, we have not made any determination on whether Petitioner’s actions breach the parties’ Settlement Agreement.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

of infringement upon which they instituted this CBM.”).

Initially, we observe that though the decision in *Global Tel\*Link* may be instructive, contrary to Patent Owner’s assertion, that decision has not been designated precedential. Moreover, taking into consideration the discussion by the panel in *Global Tel\*Link*, we are not persuaded that our determination misapprehended or overlooked any arguments or evidence in the record. For example, the panel there determined that the “Petitioner ha[d] not demonstrated sufficiently that it satisfies the standing requirements to file its Petition under 37 C.F.R. § 42.304(a) and, therefore, den[ied] institution of a covered business method patent review.” *Global Tel\*Link Corp*, Paper 17 at 2. In contrast, we discussed at length in the FWD how Petitioner provided sufficient evidence for standing in this proceeding. Specifically, we applied *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, 549 U.S. 118 (2007) and determined the particular factual circumstances of the parties’ past relationship regarding allegations of infringement, the Settlement Agreement (Ex. 2006), and the parties’ current dispute of the same Agreement in district court (events that had all taken place by the time of the CBM filing) to be sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish Petitioner’s CBM patent review standing under relevant case law. FWD 8–11; Dec. 11–19; *see* Papers 10, 13, 18. Thus, we do not agree that our FWD “arbitrarily and capriciously” found a charge of infringement.

C. *Abstract Idea*

Patent Owner further argues that the FWD misapplies *Alice* to the facts. Patent Owner asserts first that the FWD’s articulation of the abstract

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

idea is contrary to the parties' agreement in the record and in the Institution Decision. Specifically, Patent Owner contends that it did not have an opportunity to defend against the Board's change of the abstract idea from "allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game" to "rules for playing a bonus wagering game." Reh'g Req. 10–12.

To Patent Owner's point, the FWD phrased the same abstract idea slightly differently by including "rules for playing" the bonus wager game in the abstract idea. Nonetheless, we are not persuaded that this is clear error or deprived Patent Owner of the opportunity to defend its position. Indeed, Patent Owner does not explain *why* the "rules for playing a bonus wagering game" is substantively different from "allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game," or, more importantly, the basis for Patent Owner's contention that this is a "fundamental change." *See* Reh'g Req. 11.

Indeed, there can be no doubt that from the very start of this proceeding, the issue at the heart of the patent eligibility dispute between the parties is whether the challenged claims recite significantly more than the rules for playing a bonus wagering game (i.e., allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game). For example, in the Decision on Institution, we explained that challenged claim 1 is expressly directed to a "method of playing game with at least one deck of cards" with the steps of placing a bonus wager (step (a)), forming a bonus hand (step (c)), identifying a winner of the bonus wager (step (d)), and paying the winner (step (e)). Ex. 1001, claim 1; Dec. 27. Further, we noted that the Specification describes the mechanics of gameplay by providing

the rules with which the game will be played, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands,

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

Dec. 28 (quoting Ex. 1001, 3:31–37). Thus, we have said from the start and to the end that the challenged claims at issue involve *rules* for gameplay. *Id.*; FWD 22–24.

Further, in our analysis in both the Decision on Institution and FWD, we provided detailed discussions regarding the parties’ respective contentions related to *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816, 817–818 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Dec. 28–30; FWD 24–26. We noted that in *Smith*, the Federal Circuit determined that

Applicants’ claims, directed to rules for conducting a wagering game, compare to other “fundamental economic practice[s]” found abstract by the Supreme Court. *See id.* As the Board reasoned here, “[a] wagering game is, effectively, a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations based on probabilities created during the distribution of the cards.” J.A. 15. In *Alice*, the Supreme Court held that a method of exchanging financial obligations was drawn to an abstract idea. 134 S. Ct. at 2356–57. Likewise, in *Bilski*, the Court determined that a claim to a method of hedging risk was directed to an abstract idea. 561 U.S. at 611, 130 S. Ct. 3218. Here, *Applicants’ claimed “method of conducting a wagering game” is drawn to an abstract idea much like Alice’s method of exchanging financial obligations and Bilski’s method of hedging risk.*

Dec. 29–30 (citing *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818–819); *see* FWD 24–25 (discussing the same portions of *Smith*). We determined also that the challenged claims in this proceeding were analogous to those at issue in *Smith*, which recited “rules for conducting a wagering game.” FWD 26. Moreover, we observe that even in *Smith*, the Federal Circuit agreed that the “method of conducting a wagering game” implicates the same abstract idea

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

as “rules for conducting a wagering game.” *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818–819.

Given the complete record, Patent Owner has not explained persuasively why the challenged claims are not directed to the “rules for playing a bonus wagering game” or “allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game.” In fact, the discussion provided in the FWD would be the same under either articulation of the same abstract idea. Thus, we do not agree that our FWD changed theories in midstream or otherwise deprived Patent Owner of an opportunity to defend itself. *See* Reh’g Req. 11.

*D. Federal Circuit Decisions*

Patent Owner further argues that it did not have an opportunity to address the Federal Circuit decisions in *BSG Tech LLC v. BuySeasons, Inc.*, 899 F.3d 1281 (Fed. Cir. 2018) and *ChargePoint, Inc. v. SemaConnect, Inc.*, 920 F.3d 759 (Fed. Cir. 2019) that were cited in the FWD. Reh’g Req. 12. Yet, Patent Owner has not argued that it was not aware of these precedential Federal Circuit decisions, and acknowledges that “*BSG* is just another case referred to in the Revised Guidance as one of numerous decisions [issued by the Federal Circuit] identifying subject matter as abstract or non-abstract in the context of specific cases, and that number is continuously growing.” *Id.*

Further, Patent Owner has not explained persuasively why our FWD may not cite to applicable precedential decisions issued by our reviewing court. *See* Reh’g Req. 14 (“Reliance on *ChargePoint* and *BSG* is clear error and contrary to USPTO policy (and thus a violation of the APA).”). Thus, we are not persuaded of error on this basis. The 2019 Revised Patent Subject Matter Eligibility Guidance (“Guidance”) does not require us to depart from the 101 analysis provided by precedent. Rather, the

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

“USPTO . . . aims to clarify the analysis” “[i]n accordance with judicial precedent and in an effort to improve consistency and predictability[.]” 84 Fed. Reg. 50, 53 (Jan. 7, 2019).

For rehearing, Patent Owner argues for the first time that the Federal Circuit’s decision in *Cellspin Soft, Inc. v. Fitbit, Inc.*, 927 F.3d 1306 (Fed. Cir. 2019) provides an opposing interpretation of the *BSG* decision. The *Cellspin* decision was issued on June 25, 2019, after our FWD was entered on June 19, 2019. As such, we could not have misapprehended or overlooked case law that had not been issued by the Federal Circuit, or submitted and argued by the parties in this proceeding.

Even considering *Cellspin*, we are not persuaded of any error in the FWD. *Cellspin* quotes *BSG* for the proposition that “[i]f a claim’s only ‘inventive concept’ is the application of an abstract idea using conventional and well-understood techniques, the claim has not been transformed into a patent-eligible application of an abstract idea.” *Cellspin*, 927 F.3d at 1316 (quoting *BSG*, 899 F.3d at 1290–91). In the FWD, we explained that the challenged claims used conventional and well-understood techniques, i.e., rules for playing a game. FWD 39–41 (citing Ex. 1001, 1:27–40, 2:52–67), 40–41. In view of this disclosure, we determine that the ’806 patent expressly acknowledges that any allegedly inventive concepts involving (a) placing a bonus wager; (b) dealing out cards to each player; (c) forming the bonus hand; (d) identifying a winning player; and (e) paying the winning player were merely well-understood, routine, and conventional, steps for playing a card game.

Thus, for the reasons above, we are not persuaded that we have

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

misapprehended or overlooked evidence based on these arguments.

Additionally, Patent Owner contends that we ignored Patent Owner's argument that *Smith* is not on point and is irrelevant in the *Alice*, Step 2B analysis. Reh'g Req. 16. We disagree with Patent Owner's reading of the FWD. We considered Patent Owner's many arguments regarding *Smith* on pages 28–31 of the FWD. For example, on page 31 of the FWD, we determined that

Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is distinguishable because it is an *ex parte* appeal decision, which is different from an issued patent where the patent examiner determined that the patent application recited allowable patent-eligible subject matter. PO Resp. 19–20; *see* Sur. 8. Patent Owner has not explained why this difference matters for the patent-eligibility inquiry that we must conduct here. *See id.* We decline to speculate on the basis for Patent Owner's position. Rather, we observe that the § 101 inquiry is the same regardless of whether it is addressed in the context of examination, as in *Smith*, or in the context of a contested proceeding over an issued patent, as in the case here. Thus, we are not persuaded that *Smith* is distinguishable merely because our § 101 inquiry arises in a CBM patent review of an issued patent.

FWD 31.

Thus, for the reasons above, we are not persuaded that we have misapprehended or overlooked evidence based on these arguments.

*E. Significantly More*

Patent Owner further argues that

[t]he claims of the '806 patent add “forming only one bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands.” This element is significantly more than the defined skilled artisan would consider well understood, routine, and conventional in 2004, as supported by the unrefuted evidence

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

provided by Patent Owner (*see* PO Response at 16-18, PO Sur-Reply p 5-6). The evidence of what is well-understood, routine, and conventional in 2004 is found in the prosecution history of '806 patent, where the Examiner states “closest prior art of reference was Malcolm. His teachings however fail to anticipate or render obvious applicant’s invention.” The Decision states that bonus hands were well-known at the time of the invention, *but nowhere in the Decision does it state that “forming only one bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands” was well-known.*

Reh’g Req. 15 (emphasis added).

We disagree with Patent Owner’s reading of our FWD. First, as discussed above, we explained that the challenged claims use conventional and well-understood techniques, i.e., rules for playing a game. FWD 39–41 (citing Ex. 1001, 1:27–40, 2:52–67); *see id.* at 43 (“[T]he Examiner’s reasons for allowance are directed to novelty and nonobviousness, not eligibility. But the fact that the claims may be novel or nonobvious, thereby meeting the patentability requirements of § 102 and § 103, has no bearing on whether the challenged claims are patent-eligible under § 101.”). In view of this disclosure, we determine that the '806 patent expressly acknowledges that any allegedly inventive concepts involving (a) placing a bonus wager; (b) dealing out cards to each player; (c) forming the bonus hand; (d) identifying a winning player; and (e) paying the winning player were merely well-understood, routine, and conventional steps for playing a card game.

Further, we explained that “each of the steps of claim 1, including Step C and Step D relied upon by Patent Owner to argue the claims add ‘significantly more’ than just the abstract idea, are part of the rules of the wagering game using a generic deck of cards.” *Id.* at 42 (citing Ex. 1001,

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

6:60–7:4; 3:1–8). In this way, the challenged claims are similar to those at issue in *Smith* because “[t]he wagering game claimed in *Smith*, reciting rules for a wagering game that use a standard deck of cards, was held to be an abstract idea. *Id.* (citing *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819). *Id.* The Federal Circuit determined in *Smith* that the “shuffling and dealing a standard deck of cards are ‘purely conventional’ activities” that do render the claims patent eligible. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819. As discussed in the FWD, the same rationale applies here where Step C is a conventional activity of gameplay that involves the forming of a bonus hand. For these reasons, we are not persuaded we overlooked or misapprehended evidence or arguments on this basis.

### III. CONCLUSION

Based on the foregoing, Patent Owner fails to show that the Final Written Decision overlooks or misapprehends a matter previously addressed by Patent Owner.

### IV. ORDER

For the reasons given, it is ORDERED that the Patent Owner’s Rehearing Request is *denied*.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent 7,325,806 B1

For PETITIONER:

Gene Lee  
PERKINS COIE LLP  
lee-ptab@perkinscoie.com

For PATENT OWNER:

Richard Baker  
NEW ENGLAND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY, LLC  
rbaker@newenglandip.com

Steven Martin  
ALTMAN & MARTIN  
smartin@altmartlaw.com

[Trials@uspto.gov](mailto:Trials@uspto.gov)  
571-272-7822

Paper 19  
Entered: June 22, 2018

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

---

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

---

BALLY GAMING, INC., DBA BALLY TECHNOLOGIES,  
Petitioner,

v.

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.  
Patent Owner.

---

Case CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

---

Before FRANCES L. IPPOLITO, KEVIN W. CHERRY, and  
CHRISTOPHER G. PAULRAJ, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

IPPOLITO, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

DECISION  
Institution of Covered Business Method Patent Review  
*37 C.F.R. § 42.208*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

## I. INTRODUCTION

Petitioner, Bally Gaming, Inc., DBA Bally Technologies, filed a Petition seeking a covered business method (“CBM”) patent review of U.S. Patent No. 7,325,806 B1 (Ex. 1001, “’806 patent”), pursuant to § 18 of the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act (“AIA”). In the Petition (Paper 2, “Pet.”), Petitioner challenges claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent. Pet. 25–31. Patent Owner, New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc., filed a Preliminary Response (Paper 6, “Prelim. Resp.”) opposing institution of a review. Following authorization by the panel (Paper 10), Petitioner filed a Reply (Paper 13, “Reply”) to the Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response and Patent Owner filed a Sur-Reply (Paper 18, “Sur-Reply”) to Petitioner’s Reply.

We have authority under 35 U.S.C. § 324. Under 35 U.S.C. § 324(a), “[t]he Director may not authorize a post-grant review to be instituted unless the Director determines that . . . it is more likely than not that at least 1 of the claims challenged in the petition is unpatentable.”

On the current record, Petitioner demonstrates sufficiently that the ’806 patent is a covered business method patent, and that it is more likely than not that claims 1–12 are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101 as directed to non-statutory subject matter. Therefore, we institute a CBM patent review for claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent based upon Petitioner’s challenge.

### A. *Related Matters*

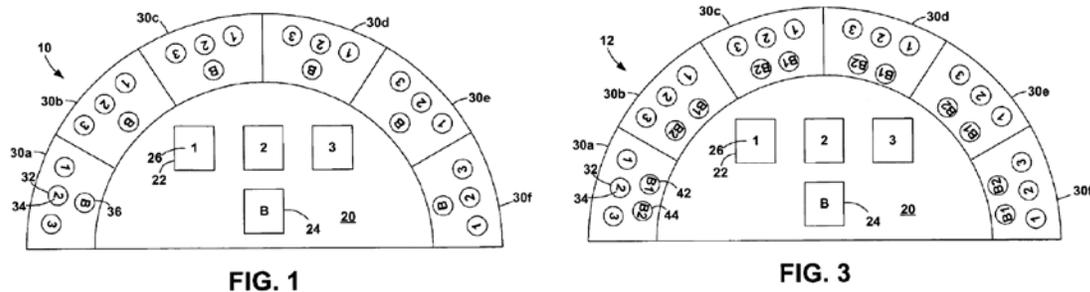
The parties represent that they are involved in lawsuit alleging a breach of an existing patent license agreement in *New Vision Gaming &*

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

*Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming, Inc.*, 2:17-cv-1559 (D. Nev. June 2, 2017) (“Nevada Suit”). Pet. 7–9; *see* Prelim. Resp. 4.

### B. The '806 Patent

The '806 patent is directed generally to a method of playing a bonus wager in a card game. Ex. 1001, (54). The '806 patent further describes the invention as “a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a face up card from each hand of a group of hands of a base [card] game.” Ex. 1001, 2:48–50. Referring to Figures 1 and 3 (reproduced below), the '806 patent teaches that on playing surfaces 10, 12, central dealer position 20 has a plurality of player hand locations 22, one for each player hand to be dealt. *Id.* at 3:40–50.



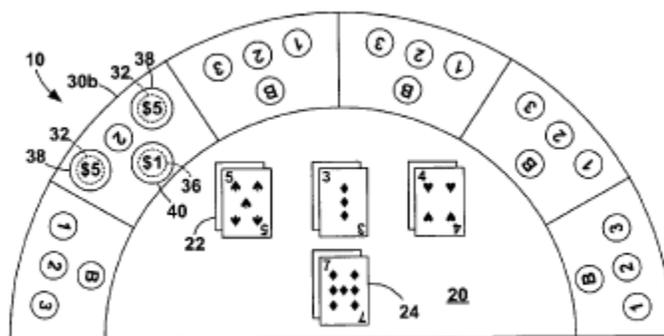
Figures 1 and 3 show a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand. *Id.* at 2:30–33, 35–37. As shown in Figures 1 and 3, dealer position 20 has banker hand location 24 for the one banker hand. *Id.* at 3:48–50. Symbols 26 at each player hand location 22 are the player hand identifiers, which are typically numerals running sequentially from “1”. *Id.* at 3:50–52.

According to these figures, “[e]ach player position 30 includes a symbol 32 containing a player hand identifier 34 corresponding to each

CBM2018-00005  
 Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

player hand location 22. Ex. 1001, 3:55–57. “The example of Figure 1 has a single bonus wager symbol 36 for one bonus and the example of Figure 3 as two bonus wager symbols 42, 44 for two bonuses.” Ex. 1001, 3:61–64.

To play the game, each player chooses the player hand or hands that she thinks will beat the banker hand in the base game. Ex. 1001, 3:65–67. Figure 2 is provided below to better illustrate the described game.



**FIG. 2**

In Figure 2, the selections are made by placing the amount to be wagered on the corresponding player hand identifier symbol 32 of the player position 30. *Id.* at 3:67–4:2. The wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers. *Id.* at 4:2–4. In the example of Figure 2, the player at the second player position 30b (player 2) has placed a \$5 chip 38 on each identifier symbol 32 for player hands 1 and 3, wagering that player hands 1 and 3 will beat the dealer hand. Ex. 1001, 4:5–8.

To participate in a bonus wager, the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location. Ex. 1001, 4:13–15. After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

hands. *Id.* at 4:30–31. The bonus hand of the present invention is composed of at least one card from each player hand. Ex. 1001, 4:39–40. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand and the banker hand(s). Ex. 1001, 4:52–53. The bonus hand may be compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the bonus hand is a winning hand and the player placing a bonus wager is a winner. Ex. 1001, 4:49–51.

*C. Illustrative Claim*

Of the challenged claims 1–12, claim 1 is independent. Independent claim 1, reproduced below, is illustrative of the claimed subject matter:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:
  - (a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
  - (b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
  - (c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;
  - (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and
  - (e) paying said winning player a payout.

*D. The Asserted Ground*

Petitioner contends claims 1–12 of the '806 patent are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101 as directed to non-statutory subject matter. Pet. 25–31.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

*E. Claim Construction*

Petitioner proposes constructions for the terms “wager,” “payout,” “card,” “deck of cards,” and “hand.” Pet. 22–23. For the purposes of this Decision, we determine that no express claim construction of any claim term is necessary. *See Vivid Techs., Inc. v. Am. Sci. & Eng’g, Inc.*, 200 F.3d 795, 803 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (Only terms in controversy must be construed and only to the extent necessary to resolve the controversy).

II. MANDATORY NOTICES

As an initial matter, Patent Owner asserts that institution should be denied because the Petition is incomplete and defective. Prelim. Resp. 4–5, 9–11. Specifically, Patent Owner argues the Petition failed to list the Nevada Suit under “Related Matters” as required by 35 U.S.C. § 322(a)(4)<sup>1</sup>; 37 C.F.R. 42.8(b)(2). *Id.*; Sur-Reply 9–11. Further, Patent Owner contends that Petitioner’s Updated Mandatory Notices (Paper 7) listing the Nevada Suit is an unauthorized filing that should be expunged. Sur-Reply 9.

Patent Owner’s position is not persuasive. First, we note that although the “Related Matters” section of the Petition does not include the Nevada Suit (Pet. 2), the Petition, nonetheless, identifies and describes the

---

<sup>1</sup> Patent Owner refers to § 312(a), but that section applies to *inter partes* review. Covered Business Method patent reviews are governed by a similar provision in § 322(a). *See* AIA § 18(a)(1). Because there is no difference in relevant provisions between the two sections, we consider Patent Owner’s references to be to § 322(a).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

Nevada Suit in detail in Section IV.A of the Petition. In particular, the Petition states:

Patent Owner New Vision has accused Bally of breaching a license for the '806 patent, and Bally responded to New Vision's complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the '806 patent is invalid. (Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 2-3; Exs. 1008, 1003, 1004.) New Vision filed a motion to dismiss certain aspects of Bally's pleading but did not object to or move to dismiss Bally's affirmative defense and counterclaim on invalidity. (Ex. 1002 ¶ 4; Ex. 1005.) Accordingly, there is no dispute regarding Bally's standing to seek a declaratory judgment that the '806 patent is invalid and to file this Petition.

Furthermore, Bally has asserted that its relevant games do not fall within the scope of the claims of the '806 patent, and New Vision has expressed disagreement with that assertion. (Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 5-7; Exs. 1006 and 1007.) Accordingly, Bally presented an affirmative defense that it does not infringe the '806 patent, and New Vision did not seek to dismiss or strike that defense. For this additional reason, Bally has standing to bring a declaratory judgment action in district court and to file this Petition.

Pet. 7–8. The Petition refers to and is accompanied by briefs from the Nevada Suit, which clearly identify the Nevada Suit, the involved parties (Petitioner and Patent Owner), and the patents at issue. *See* Ex. 1003 (Complaint); Ex. 1004, 9–14 (Answers and Counterclaims); Ex. 1005 (Motion to Dismiss). Thus, for the purposes of 37 CFR § 42.8, we determine that pages 7 through 8 of the Petition identify sufficiently “any other judicial or administrative matter that would affect, or be affected by, a decision in the proceeding.”

Second, generally, a lapse in compliance with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. § 312(a), which is the corresponding section for *inter partes*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

review to § 322(a), does not deprive the Board of jurisdiction over the proceeding, or preclude the Board from permitting such lapse to be rectified. *Lumentum Holdings, Inc. v. Capella Photonics, Inc.*, IPR2015-00739, slip op. 5 (PTAB March 4, 2016) (Paper 38) (precedential). Here, because the Petition identifies the Nevada Suit in another section of the Petition, we determine that there is no prejudice to Patent Owner in permitting Petitioner to update its Mandatory Notices (Paper 7), which Petitioner has already done. Patent Owner is a party to the Nevada Suit, and, in fact, initiated the Nevada Suit against the Petitioner. As such, Patent Owner was aware of the related litigation involving the '806 patent and the '987 patent well before the filing of the Petition.

### III. FORUM SELECTION CLAUSE

Patent Owner asserts that on May 28, 2014, Petitioner and Patent Owner entered into a settlement agreement (Ex. 2005 “Agreement”) under which Petitioner was granted a license to the '806 patent and U.S. Patent No. 7,451,987 (the '987 patent). Ex. 2005, 1; *see* Prelim. Resp. 6. Patent Owner contends that the Agreement contains a forum selection clause that requires all disputes be handled in the courts in the State of Nevada. Prelim. Resp. 7–8. According to Patent Owner, Petitioner has waived its opportunity to seek review by the Board because Section 13.f of the settlement agreement states:

“In the event of any dispute between any of the parties that cannot be resolved amicably, the parties agree and consent to the exclusive jurisdiction of an appropriate state or federal court

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

located within the State of Nevada, Clark County, to resolve any such dispute.”

Ex. 2005, 7. We understand Patent Owner’s first argument to be that the Agreement contractually estops or bars Petitioner from seeking a covered business method patent review. *See* Prelim. Resp. 8, 16–18. Patent Owner further argues that we should deny review because federal district courts can enforce venue selection clauses against the Board through injunction “making it unlikely that the PTAB will have the opportunity to find any claims in the ’806 patent unpatentable.” Sur-Reply 5. For additional support, Patent Owner refers to the court’s decision in *Dodocase VR, Inc. v MerchSource, LLC*, 17-cv-07088-EDL (N.D. Cal., March 26, 2018) ordering the parties in that case to initiate procedures to withdraw the Petitions. Sur-Reply 7.

In its Reply, Petitioner counters that the decision in the *Dodocase* is the subject of an emergency appeal to the Federal Circuit, which has stayed the preliminary injunction directing the defendant/petitioner to seek dismissal of PTAB petitions that had been filed against the plaintiff’s patents. Reply 7 (citing Ex. 1028).

Based on the current record, we are not persuaded that institution should be denied on the basis of 35 U.S.C. § 324(a) because a federal district court *could* possibly enforce the forum selection clause against Petitioner. *See* Sur-Reply 5. Unlike *Dodocase*, the instant proceeding does not involve a decision by a federal district court ordering the parties to withdraw the Petition filed with the Patent Trial and Appeal Board. Ex. 1027. Rather, there is no indication, in our record, that either party has requested a federal

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

district court (e.g., the court before which the Nevada Suit is pending) to issue an order requiring Petitioner to withdraw its Petitions. *Cf.* Ex. 1027. At a minimum, Patent Owner has not explained sufficiently how “the Nevada Court would enjoin the PTAB from considering Bally’s Petition if the proceeding continue” when it does not appear from the current record that this issue has been presented to a federal district court. Sur-Reply 8. As such, Patent Owner’s arguments are largely speculative at this point.

Further, as a general matter, Patent Owner has identified no other authority—such as by statute, rule, or binding precedent—that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. Patent Owner asserts that 35 U.S.C. §§ 317, 327 demonstrate that the Board “regularly accepts and enforces settlement agreements.” Sur-Reply 7. However, these sections only allow (but do not require) the Board to terminate of an ongoing proceeding based on settlement between parties. Patent Owner has not directed us to any authority that provides explicit support for a contractual bar/estoppel defense against the institution of a covered business method patent review. For example, section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we note that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). We do not discern, nor has

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

Patent Owner pointed to, any portions of chapter 32 or § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, that explicitly provide for a contractual estoppel defense. *Cf. Athena Automation Ltd. v. Husky Injection Molding Sys. Ltd.*, Case IPR2013–00290, slip op. at 12–13 (PTAB Oct. 25, 2013) (Paper 18) (precedential) (finding no statutory basis for application of assignor estoppel defense in IPR proceedings).

#### IV. COVERED BUSINESS METHOD

##### A. Background

As noted above, on May 28, 2014, Petitioner and Patent Owner entered into an Agreement (Ex. 2005) that provided Petitioner a license to the '806 patent and the '987 patent. Ex. 2005, 1; *see* Prelim. Resp. 6. Subsequently, a dispute arose between the parties regarding this Agreement, which prompted Patent Owner to file the Nevada Suit. According to Patent Owner's Motion for Partial Summary Judgment filed in the Nevada Suit, "[p]rior to the parties' entering into the Settlement Agreement, (1) NEW VISION obtained separate patents, numbered '806 and '987 (the 'Patents'); (2) NEW VISION accused Defendant [Bally] of using games subject to these Patents; and, (3) Defendant asserted the Patents were invalid." Ex. 1024, 3. Following the execution of the Agreement, Petitioner paid Patent Owner two-and-half years of quarterly payments pursuant to the Agreement's initial three (3) year term. Ex. 2002 ¶ 11. In a February 8, 2017 letter, Petitioner informed Patent Owner that Petitioner was terminating the Agreement and would not renew the Agreement for another three year term. Ex. 1006. Further, in that letter, Petitioner stated that "we

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

have determined that the games at issue do not fall within the scope of the claims of the licensed patents. Accordingly, we will not be paying any royalties to you under the Agreement, including royalties for prior periods of time.” Ex. 1006. In its written response on June 7, 2017, Patent Owner issued a demand for payment and further asserted that

Baily’s obligation to make quarterly payments is simply not dependent upon the use or applicability of the patents but is based upon time and the use of specific games. Again, none of the contractual conditions that would allow Bally to stop payment have occurred.”

Ex. 1007. Enclosed with Patent Owner’s letter was a copy of a complaint that initiated the Nevada Suit. *Id.*

In the Nevada Suit, Patent Owner has asserted several causes of action, including breach of contract, unjust enrichment, and breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing. Patent Owner has not asserted a patent infringement action in the Nevada Suit. Ex. 2002. In Petitioner’s Answer and Counterclaims, Petitioner asserts a defense of non-infringement and a counterclaim for declaratory judgment of invalidity of the ’806 patent and ’987 patent. Ex. 2001, 7, 13–14. Patent Owner has moved to dismiss some of Petitioner’s counterclaims in the Nevada Suit, but Patent Owner’s motion does not seek to dismiss Petitioner’s counterclaim for declaratory judgment of invalidity. Ex. 1005.

With respect to the record in the instant proceeding, Patent Owner maintains that it has not revoked the license, and, therefore, Petitioner is licensed and does not infringe the ’806 patent and the ’987 patent. *Id.* Patent Owner further maintains that the related district court litigation is a

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

breach of contract suit and that Petitioner has not been sued for infringement. Prelim. Resp. 12 (citing Ex. NVG2002).

*B. Standing to File a Petition for Covered Business Method Patent Review*

Under § 18(a)(1)(B) of the America Invents Act (AIA), “[a] person may not file a petition for a transitional proceeding with respect to a covered business method patent unless the person or the person’s real party in interest or privy has been sued for infringement of the patent or has been charged with infringement under that patent.” AIA § 18(a)(1)(B) (emphasis added); *see also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a). Petitioner contends that this standing requirement is satisfied because Patent Owner New Vision has accused Bally of breaching a license for the ’806 patent, and Bally responded to New Vision’s complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the ’806 patent is invalid. (Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 2-3; Exs. 1008, 1003, 1004.)” Pet. 7–8.

After considering the parties’ arguments, including those set forth in their supplemental briefs, we determine that Petitioner has met its burden of demonstrating that it is eligible to bring this CBM review. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 42.304(a).

*1. Whether Petitioner Has Been “Sued for Infringement”*

To start, we note that Patent Owner has not sued Petitioner for infringement. Ex. 2002. In the Nevada Suit, Patent Owner characterizes the action as containing state causes of action for breach of contract, unjust enrichment, breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing, accounting, and declaratory relief. Ex. 2002, 2; *see* Prelim. Resp. 12.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

## 2. Charged with Infringement

Next we determine whether Petition has been “charged with infringement.” Our rules provide that “[c]harged with infringement means “a real and substantial controversy regarding infringement of a covered business method patent exists such that the petitioner would have standing to bring a declaratory judgment action in Federal court.” 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a). The Declaratory Judgment Act provides that “[i]n a case of actual controversy within its jurisdiction, ... any court of the United States, upon the filing of an appropriate pleading, may declare the rights and other legal relations of any interested party seeking such declaration.” 28 U.S.C. § 2201(a).

In *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, the Supreme Court stated that the test for whether an “actual controversy” exists is “whether the facts alleged, under all the circumstances, show that there is a substantial controversy, between parties having adverse legal interests, of sufficient immediacy and reality to warrant the issuance of a declaratory judgment.” 549 U.S. 118, 127 (2007) (internal quotation marks omitted). Further, our reviewing court has instructed that *MedImmune* relaxed the test for establishing jurisdiction, but “did not change the bedrock rule that a case or controversy must be based on a real and immediate injury or threat of future injury that is caused by the defendants—an objective standard that cannot be met by a purely subjective or speculative fear of future harm.” *Prasco, LLC v. Medicis Pharm. Corp.*, 537 F.3d 1329, 1339 (Fed. Cir. 2008). The Federal Circuit has further explained that

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

“jurisdiction generally will not arise merely on the basis that a party learns of the existence of a patent owned by another or even perceives such a patent to pose a risk of infringement, without some affirmative act by the patentee.” *SanDisk*, 480 F.3d at 1381. Instead, we have required “conduct that can be reasonably inferred as demonstrating intent to enforce a patent.” *Hewlett-Packard Co. v. Acceleron LLC*, 587 F.3d 1358, 1363 (Fed. Cir. 2009)

*Asia Vital Components Co. v. Asetek Danmark A/S*, 837 F.3d 1249, 1253 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

Turning to the facts before us, in the Petition, Petitioner asserts standing under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a) to file this Petition because “Patent Owner New Vision has accused Bally of breaching a license for the ’806 patent, and Bally responded to New Vision’s complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the ’806 patent is invalid.” Pet. 7–8. In the Petitioner’s Reply to Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response, Petitioner adds that the Nevada Suit in federal district court already includes Petitioner’s declaratory judgment counterclaim for patent invalidity, which Patent Owner has not moved to dismiss. Reply 3–4 (citing Ex. 1005; Ex. 1007; Ex. 2005 Sec. 3). Further, Petitioner asserts separately that it was charged with infringement at the time the Petition was filed in December 2017 because Petitioner did not renew the Agreement after the expiration of the initial term (on May 28, 2017) and a real and substantial controversy about infringement existed at the time of filing of the Petition. Reply 5. Petitioner explains that the same dispute regarding infringement that had been resolved by the Agreement arose again when the Agreement expired because Petitioner’s post-expiration activities are not covered by the license.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

Reply 5 (citing Ex. 1007, 1). Petitioner also asserts that Patent Owner's Motion for Partial Summary Judgment in the Nevada Suit confirms that the Agreement resolved an infringement dispute between the parties. Reply 5 (citing Ex. 2005).

Petitioner adds that it is not estopped from filing this Petition because neither Bally, nor any real party in interest or privy, has previously challenged the patentability of the claims of the '806 patent. Pet. 8. Petitioner asserts that it is not barred from filing this petition under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(c) because it has not filed a civil action challenging the validity of any claim of this patent, and its counterclaim of invalidity does not constitute a civil action challenging the validity of a claim of the '806 patent. Pet. 8–9.

In its Preliminary Response, Patent Owner maintains that it has not charged Petitioner with infringement because the royalties from the Agreement “are not based on infringement but on the term and the use of a specific game.” Prelim. Resp. 12. Patent Owner adds that it has not revoked the license to Petitioner and, thus, “[b]ecause Bally's products are covered by a license under the settlement agreement (Exhibit NVG2005), they do not infringe.” Prelim. Resp. 13–15. Patent Owner further contends that a breach of contract action is not necessarily an infringement suit. Prelim. Resp. 14–15. In Patent Owner's Sur-Reply to Petitioner's Reply, Patent Owner argues that Petitioner's “fear of infringement does not create standing” and previous claims of infringement occurred prior to the effective date of the Agreement. Sur-Reply 3–4.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

We have reviewed Petitioner's and Patent Owner's submissions and supporting evidence, and we determine that, on this record, Petitioner has established sufficiently the facts taken together demonstrate that it has standing to bring this covered business method patent review. Contrary to Patent Owner's position, Petitioner's standing does not hinge on whether the Agreement has terminated or expired. In *MedImmune*, the Supreme Court held that, where a licensor has demanded royalties due under a patent license, a licensee "was not required, insofar as Article III is concerned, to break or terminate [the] license agreement before seeking a declaratory judgment in federal court that the underlying patent is invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed." 549 U.S. at 137. Here, Patent Owner has stated that "[b]ecause Bally's products are covered by a license under the settlement agreement (Exhibit NVG2005), they do not infringe." Prelim. Resp. 15. Patent Owner's position presumes that Petitioner's products would infringe the '806 patent and the '987 patent if the Agreement (and license) had not been renewed. However, even if the Agreement is in full effect, this fact alone is not dispositive of the standing issue. Rather, the question of jurisdiction does not turn on whether Patent Owner specifically alleged infringement of the asserted patents; instead, the question is whether, under all the circumstances, Patent Owner's actions "can be reasonably inferred as demonstrating intent to enforce a patent." *See Asia* at 1254 (citing *Hewlett-Packard*, 587 F.3d at 1363).

Looking to the relationship between the parties, it is undisputed that the Agreement between the parties arose from Patent Owner's intent to

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

enforce the '806 patent and the '987 patent against the Petitioner. Ex. 1024, 3; Reply 5. Patent Owner acknowledges that prior to the Agreement, Patent Owner “accused Defendant [Bally] of using games subject to these Patents; and . . . Defendant asserted the Patents were invalid.” Ex. 1024, 4. While those past events were allegedly resolved by the execution of the Agreement, we, nonetheless, take into consideration that the parties’ past relationship provides context for the current disputes between them. In particular, there is a dispute as to whether the Agreement and license to the '806 patent and the '987 patent is still in effect; whether Petitioner’s products/activities infringe; and whether the patents are valid. Prelim. Resp. 13–15; Reply 3–5; Sur-Reply 3–5. Thus, the current disputes between the parties are clearly rooted in the original allegations of infringement that led to the signing of the Agreement in the first place, and which continue to be at issue in the contract dispute between the parties.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, taking

---

<sup>2</sup> This is in contrast to the situation in *TicketNetwork, Inc. v. CEATS, LLC*, Case CBM2018-00004 (PTAB May 24, 2018) (Paper 19), where the challenged patent was only one of a large portfolio of patents and the undisputed evidence showed that Petitioner had neither undertaken any conduct that remotely could be within the scope of the claims nor even alleged that such conduct was or may take place in the future. *Id.* at 15–16. Here, in contrast, Petitioner acknowledges that it offers and continues to offer games that, although Petitioner denies infringe the patents, Patent Owner does contend are within the scope of the challenged patents. Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 5–7; Exs. 1006 and 1007. Moreover, the record in *TicketNetwork* included Petitioner’s admissions made to convince the district court to dismiss its declaratory judgment action without prejudice that Patent Owner had no intent at that time to sue for infringement. *Id.* at 12–13. No such admissions exist here, and, in fact, Petitioner’s

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

into account the full relationship between the parties and the particular circumstances in this case, we determine that Patent Owner’s statements and actions are sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish standing under relevant case law.

*C. Covered Business Method Patent Review Eligibility*

Section 18 of the AIA further provides that

the term “covered business method patent” means a patent that claims a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service, except that the term does not include patents for technological inventions.

AIA § 18(d)(1); *see* 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(a). A patent need have only one claim directed to a covered business method to be eligible for review. *See* Transitional Program for Covered Business Method Patents—Definitions of Covered Business Method Patent and Technological Invention; Final Rule, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,734, 48,736 (Aug. 14, 2012) (“Final Rule”). Thus, we must “examine the claims when deciding whether a patent is a CBM patent.” *Blue Calypso, LLC v. Groupon, Inc.*, 815 F.3d 1331, 1340 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (emphasis omitted).

1. *Used in the Practice, Administration, or Management of a Financial Product or Service*

Petitioner asserts that all claims of the ’806 patent claim methods that

---

counterclaim for declaratory judgment of invalidity continues in district court.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

are expressly financial in nature because claims 1–12 recite a “wager” and “payout” that involve betting on games of chance. Pet. 11–16. Patent Owner does not contest Petitioner’s assertion in its Preliminary Response.

For the purposes of this Decision, we note that the language of claim 1 and the disclosure of the ’806 patent are consistent with Petitioner’s position. The current record shows that at least one claim, such as independent claim 1, reproduced above, recites a method of playing a game that involves the placement of a “bonus wager” and “paying” a “winning player a payout.” Claim 1. The ’806 patent teaches that

[i]n general, there are several forms of bonus wagers. In the bonus bet, the bonus wager goes to the banker and any winnings are paid by the banker as a fixed multiple of the wagered amount. In a jackpot, the bonus wager goes into a pot and winnings are paid from the pot as a percentage of the pot and/or a fixed amount. If the jackpot falls below a predetermined minimum value, the banker may add to the pot to restore the minimum value. In a set jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot for each game is fixed, but the fixed amount may be adjusted periodically, for example, after the jackpot is won. If more than one player wins a set jackpot, each winner is paid a predetermined amount. In a progressive jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot increases for each game played during which the jackpot is not won. If more than one player wins a progressive jackpot, its value is divided equally among the winners. Optionally, the jackpots from more than one table may be linked together as a single jackpot.

Ex. 1001, 3:13–30.

In an example bonus wager game, the ’806 patent teaches that “[t]he wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers.” Ex. 1001, 4:2–4.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

Further, “[t]o participate in the bonus wager . . . the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location.” Ex. 1001, 4:13–15.

The ’806 patent also discloses that

[i]n the example of FIG. 2, player 2 has placed a \$1 chip 40 on the bonus wager symbol 36, wagering that the bonus hand will be a winning hand. In the example of FIG. 4, player 3 has placed a \$2 chip 48 on the first bonus wager symbol 42, wagering that the first bonus hand will be a winning hand, and a \$5 chip 50 on the second bonus wager symbol 44, wagering that the second bonus hand will be a winning hand.

Ex. 1001, 4:21–28.

Continuing with the example shown in Figure 2, with respect to “paying” a “payout,” the ’806 patent teaches that players who

played the bonus wager receive a predetermined amount of winnings that is determined by the rank of the bonus hand . . . [and] Tables 1 and 2 show examples of winning multiples under the ‘Bonus Bet Payout’ column. For the example bonus hand of FIG. 2, player 2 wins \$6 under the poker rankings of Table 1 because player 2 wagered \$1 and the bonus hand is a straight, which pays 6-1.

Ex. 1001, 5:39–48.

Further, the claimed method recited in claim 1 is not merely “incidental to” or “complementary to” a financial activity because the claim is expressly directed to the financial service of placing bonus wagers and paying winning players payouts based on a game of chance with a deck of cards. *See Unwired Planet, LLC v. Google Inc.*, 841 F.3d 1376, 1382 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

2. Technical Invention

Under AIA § 18(d)(1), “the term ‘covered business method patent’ . . . does not include patents for technological inventions.” Under 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b), “[i]n determining whether a patent is for a technological invention,” we consider “whether [1] the claimed subject matter as a whole recites a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art, and [2] solves a technical problem using a technical solution,” respectively, the first and second prongs of the technical invention exception.

In general, the Office Patent Trial Practice Guide provides the following guidance with respect to claim content that typically would exclude a patent from the category of a technological invention:

- (a) Mere recitation of known technologies, such as computer hardware, communication or computer networks, software, memory, computer-readable storage medium, scanners, display devices or databases, or specialized machines, such as an ATM or point of sale device.
- (b) Reciting the use of known prior art technology to accomplish a process or method, even if the process or method is novel and non-obvious.
- (c) Combining prior art structures to achieve the normal, expected, or predictable result of that combination.

Office Patent Trial Practice Guide, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,756, 48,763–64 (Aug. 14, 2012).

With respect to the first prong of § 42.301(b), Petitioner argues that the ’806 patent does not recite any technological elements and is not directed to any technological invention. Pet. 18. According to Petitioner, “the claims describe the rules for playing a wagering game and have almost no physical

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

aspect. The only physical aspects recited in the claims are cards and the players playing the card game, which are conventional, generic, and non-technological.” *Id.*

In viewing the claim language and disclosure of the ’806 patent, we agree with Petitioner that the express language of the claims, such as claim 1, recite physical aspects such as cards and non-physical aspects such as the steps for players to play a card game and a “payout,” “wager,” “predetermined rank,” etc. *See* Pet. 18–20; Ex. 1001, claim 1. Further, we are persuaded by Petitioner’s arguments that these are not novel or nonobvious technological features. According to the ’806 patent, playing card games, use of bonus wagers, and ranking for payout were known and conventional. Ex. 1001, 1:27–40 (“Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player’s hand is compared to the banker’s hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player’s hand.”); *id.* at 2:52–57 (“There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand.”). Patent Owner does not contest Petitioner’s position in its Preliminary Response.

Thus, based on the preliminary record, we determine that Petitioner sufficiently shows that at least claim 1, discussed above, does not recite a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art. Given that determination, we need not reach the second prong of whether the claim

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

solves a technical problem using a technical solution. Based on the foregoing, on this preliminary record, Petitioner persuasively shows that the '806 patent is not exempt from CBM review based on a “technological invention” exception under 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b).

## V. 35 U.S.C. § 101

### A. *Principles of Law*

Section 101 sets forth four categories of patent eligible subject matter: “Whoever invents or discovers any new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, may obtain a patent therefor, subject to the conditions and requirements of this title.” 35 U.S.C. § 101. The Supreme Court has specified three judicial exceptions to the broad categories of 35 U.S.C. § 101: “laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas.” *Alice Corp. Pty. Ltd. v. CLS Bank Int’l*, 134 S. Ct. 2347, 2354 (2014) (citation omitted); *Gottschalk v. Benson*, 409 U.S. 63, 67 (1972) (“Phenomena of nature, though just discovered, mental processes, and abstract intellectual concepts are not patentable, as they are the basic tools of scientific and technological work.”). Notwithstanding that a law of nature or an abstract idea, by itself, is not patentable, the practical application of these concepts may be deserving of patent protection. *Mayo Collaborative Servs. v. Prometheus Labs., Inc.*, 566 U.S. 66, 70–73 (2012).

The Court clarified the process for analyzing claims to determine whether they are directed to patent-ineligible subject matter. *Alice*, 134 S.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

Ct. 2347. In *Alice*, the Court applied the framework set forth previously in *Mayo*, “for distinguishing patents that claim laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas from those that claim patent-eligible applications of [these] concepts.” *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2355. The first step in the analysis is to “determine whether the claims at issue are directed to one of those patent-ineligible concepts.” *Id.* If the claims are directed to a patent-ineligible concept, the second step in the analysis is to consider the elements of the claims “individually and ‘as an ordered combination’” to determine whether the additional elements “‘transform the nature of the claim’ into a patent-eligible application.” *Id.* (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 78–79). In other words, the second step is to “search for an ‘inventive concept’—i.e., an element or combination of elements that is ‘sufficient to ensure that the patent in practice amounts to significantly more than a patent upon the [ineligible concept] itself.’” *Id.* (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 72–73) (alterations in original). If the elements involve “well-understood, routine, [and] conventional activity previously engaged in by researchers in the field,” *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 73, they do not constitute an “inventive concept.”

Noting that the two stages involve “overlapping scrutiny of the content of the claims,” the Federal Circuit has described “the first-stage inquiry as looking at the ‘focus’ of the claims, their ‘character as a whole,’ and the second-stage inquiry (where reached) as looking more precisely at what the claim elements add—specifically, whether, in the Supreme Court’s terms, they identify an ‘inventive concept’ in the application of the ineligible matter to which (by assumption at stage two) the claim is directed.” *Electric*

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

*Power Grp., LLC v. Alstom S.A.*, 830 F.3d 1350, 1353 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

*B. Alice-Mayo, First Step*

In determining whether a method or process claim recites an abstract idea, we must examine the claim as a whole. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2355 n.3. Relevant to the first step inquiry, the prohibition against patenting an abstract idea “cannot be circumvented by attempting to limit the use of [an abstract idea] to a particular technological environment or adding insignificant postsolution activity.” *Bilski v. Kappos*, 561 U.S. 593, 610–11 (2010) (citation and internal quotation marks omitted); *see Electric Power*, 830 F.3d at 1355 (“[L]imiting the claims to the particular technological environment of power-grid monitoring is, without more, insufficient to transform them into patent-eligible applications of the abstract idea at their core.”). Courts have recognized numerous categories of abstract ideas, such as “methods of organizing human activity,” *Intellectual Ventures I LLC v. Capital One Bank (USA), N.A.*, 792 F.3d 1363, 1367 (Fed. Cir. 2015), or “a fundamental economic practice long prevalent in our system of commerce,” *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2356 (citation omitted).

Further, in determining whether a claimed method’s “character as a whole” is directed to an abstract idea, the Supreme Court and the Federal Circuit “have found it sufficient to compare claims at issue to those claims already found to be directed to an abstract idea in previous cases.” *Enfish, LLC v. Microsoft Corp.*, 822 F.3d 1327, 1334–35 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *see also Intellectual Ventures I LLC*, 792 F.3d at 1367 (“The abstract idea here is not meaningfully different from the ideas found to be abstract in other cases

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

before the Supreme Court and [the Federal Circuit].”). In undertaking that analysis, we recognize that claims that “purport to improve the functioning of the computer itself,” or those that “improve an existing technological process’ might not succumb to the abstract idea exception.” *Enfish*, 822 F.3d at 1335 (quoting *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2358–59) (alterations omitted).

With respect to the “abstract idea” inquiry, Petitioner asserts that the challenged claims 1–12 of the ’806 patent are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game. Pet. 25. Petitioner treats independent claim 1 as representative and asserts that the “dependent claims add minor variations on the rules set out in independent claim 1.” Pet. 25.

Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response does not address Petitioner’s §101 challenge.

For the purposes of this Decision, and based on the current record, we are persuaded that the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea. We agree with Petitioner that the challenged claims are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game. For example, consistent with Petitioner’s position, claim 1 is expressly directed to a “method of playing game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of placing a bonus wager (step (a)), forming a bonus hand (step (c)), identifying a winner of the bonus wager (step (d)), and paying the winner (step (e)). Ex. 1001, Claim 1. Additionally, the disclosure in the Specification of the ’806 patent is also consistent with Petitioner’s position. The Specification provides that the described invention is directed to a “method of playing a bonus wager” (Ex. 1001, Title), and “relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands” Ex. 1001, 1:22–25. Further, the Specification describes the mechanics of game play, which involves the house determination of

the rules with which the game will be played, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands, the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

Ex. 1001, 3:31–37.

Furthermore, our reviewing court has found activity similar to that claimed to constitute an abstract idea under the first step of *Alice*. For example, in *In re Smith*, the Applicants appealed an ex parte decision by the Board that affirmed the examiner’s rejection of pending claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Claim 1 at issue in *In re Smith* recited:

1. A method of conducting a wagering game comprising:
  - [a] ) a dealer providing at least one deck of ... physical playing cards and shuffling the physical playing cards to form a random set of physical playing cards;
  - [b] ) the dealer accepting at least one first wager from each participating player on a player game hand against a banker’s/dealer’s hand;
  - [c] ) the dealer dealing only two cards from the random set of physical playing cards to each designated player and two cards to the banker/dealer such that the designated player and the banker/dealer receive the same number of exactly two random physical playing cards;
  - [d] ) the dealer examining respective hands to determine in any hand has a Natural 0 count from totaling count from cards,

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

defined as the first two random physical playing cards in a hand being a pair of 5's, 10's, jacks, queens or kings;

[e] ) the dealer resolving any player versus dealer wagers between each individual player hand that has a Natural 0 count and between the dealer hand and all player hands where a Natural 0 is present in the dealer hand, while the dealer exposes only a single card to the players;

[f] ) as between each player and the dealer where neither hand has a Natural 0, the dealer allowing each player to elect to take a maximum of one additional card or standing pat on the initial two card player hand, while still having seen only one dealer card;

[g] ) the dealer/banker remaining pat within a first certain predetermined total counts and being required to take a single hit within a second predetermined total counts, where the first total counts range does not overlap the second total counts range;

[h] ) after all possible additional random physical playing cards have been dealt, the dealer comparing a value of each designated player's hand to a final value of the banker's/dealer's hand wherein said value of the designated player's hand and the banker's/dealer's hand is in a range of zero to nine points based on a pre-established scoring system wherein aces count as one point, tens and face cards count as zero points and all other cards count as their face value and wherein a two-digit hand total is deemed to have a value corresponding to the one's digit of the two-digit total;

[i] ) the dealer resolving the wagers based on whether the designated player's hand or the banker's/dealer's hand is nearest to a value of 0.

*In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816, 817–818 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Applying the first step of *Alice*, the Federal Circuit determined that

Applicants' claims, directed to rules for conducting a wagering game, compare to other "fundamental economic practice[s]" found abstract by the Supreme Court. *See id.* As the Board

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

reasoned here, “[a] wagering game is, effectively, a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations based on probabilities created during the distribution of the cards.” J.A. 15. In *Alice*, the Supreme Court held that a method of exchanging financial obligations was drawn to an abstract idea. 134 S. Ct. at 2356–57. Likewise, in *Bilski*, the Court determined that a claim to a method of hedging risk was directed to an abstract idea. 561 U.S. at 611, 130 S. Ct. 3218. Here, Applicants’ claimed “method of conducting a wagering game” is drawn to an abstract idea much like *Alice’s* method of exchanging financial obligations and *Bilski’s* method of hedging risk.

*Id.* at 818–819. In the instant case, we note, based on the current record, that claim 1 of the ’806 patent is also drawn to a wagering game that is effectively a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations (e.g., payout of bonus wagers) based on probabilities created during the distribution of cards. Similar to the claims at issue in *In re Smith*, we are persuaded, for the purposes of this Decision, that claim 1 of the ’806 patent is directed to an abstract idea allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game.

Viewing each of the remaining challenged claims as a whole does not dissuade us from determining, for purposes of this Decision, that the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea. The remaining dependent claims, claims 2–12 recite additional features for gameplay including which cards the bonus hand is formed from (claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9), the makeup of the plurality of hands (claims 3 and 6), and how the bonus wager/payout is paid (claims 10–12).

Accordingly, the record sufficiently indicates that, at this stage, challenged claims 1–12 are directed to a patent-ineligible abstract idea. Neither do the dependent challenged claims alter our analysis.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

*C. Alice-Mayo, Second Step*

We turn to the second step of the *Alice* inquiry “and scrutinize the claim elements more microscopically” for additional elements that might be understood to “transform the nature of the claim” into a patent-eligible application of an abstract idea. *Electric Power*, 830 F.3d at 1353–54. That is, we determine whether the claims include an “inventive concept,” i.e., an element or combination of elements sufficient to ensure that the patent in practice amounts to significantly more than a patent on the abstract idea itself. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357. “Abstract ideas, including a set of rules for a game, may be patent-eligible if they contain an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819 (citing *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357). But appending purely conventional steps to an abstract idea does not supply a sufficiently inventive concept. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357–58.

Scrutinizing the recited methods, Petitioner asserts, and we agree on this record, the claimed elements, viewed individually or as an ordered combination, do not transform the nature of the claims into patent-eligible applications of an abstract idea. Pet. 27–29. For example, claim 1 requires the steps of:

- (a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
- (b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
- (c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;
- (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

predetermined rank; and

(e) paying said winning player a payout.

Ex. 1001, Claim 1. The '806 patent teaches that forming a bonus hand from a subset of other hands and winning a bonus wager based on a predetermined rank were conventional activities in “casino table games.”

Ex. 1001, 1:27–40. Specifically, the '806 patent discloses:

Many casino table games offer bonus bets or jackpots where players may wager on occurrences that do not affect the outcome of the basic game. These types of bonus bets and jackpots are popular with players. An example of such a bonus bet is the game “21+3” disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,012,719. The game is a standard blackjack game where the player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on whether or not a three-card poker hand made of the player's first two cards and the dealer's face up card is of a certain rank. Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player's hand is compared to the banker's hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player's hand.

Ex. 1001, 1:27–40. Thus, based on the current record, we agree with Petitioner that the steps of gameplay required in claim 1, viewed individually and as a whole, recite only prior art conventional activities as described by the '806 patent. Therefore, based on this record, we determine that claim 1 does not have an “inventive concept” sufficient to “transform” the claimed subject matter into a patent-eligible application of the abstract idea.

Similarly, with respect to dependent claims 2–12, these claims recite additional features related to forming a bonus hand, player hand, and banker

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

hand, and, separately, paying a bonus wager and payout, which are also conventional activities according to the '806 patent. *See* Ex. 1001, 1:27–40. In view of the foregoing, based on the record before us, we are persuaded by Petitioner's arguments and supporting evidence that, when considered individually and "as an ordered combination," the claim elements of challenged claims 1–12 do no more than apply the abstract concept of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game, and do not recite anything in a manner sufficient to transform that abstract idea into a patent-eligible invention. *See Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2359–60 (citing *Mayo*, 132 S. Ct. at 1297–98).

## VI. CONCLUSION

For the foregoing reasons, the information presented in the Petition demonstrates that it is more likely than not that claims 1–12 of the '806 patent are unpatentable based on 35 U.S.C. § 101. We have not, however, made a final determination under 35 U.S.C. § 328(a) as to the patentability of any challenged claim.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> Because this decision refers to material that is the subject of Petitioner's motions to seal, the decision is designated as "Parties and Board Only" in the PTAB E2E system. The parties shall file jointly a *proposed* redacted version of the decision. The redactions should account for the strong public policy in favor of making all information, including confidential information relied upon in a decision in a covered business method patent review, available to the public. *See* TPG, 77 Fed. Reg. at 48,760–61.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

## VII. ORDER

For the reasons given, it is:

ORDERED that, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 324(a), a covered business method patent review of the '806 patent is hereby instituted on the ground that claims 1–12 recite non-statutory subject matter;

FURTHER ORDERED that pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 324(d) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.4, notice is hereby given of the institution of a trial, which commences on the entry date of this decision;

FURTHER ORDERED that Papers 14 and 16 will be expunged; and

FURTHER ORDERED that the parties agree upon and file, as a Paper, a proposed redacted public version of this decision within two weeks of the decision.

CBM2018-00005  
Patent No. 7,325,806 B1

PETITIONER:

Gene W. Lee  
Perkins Coie LLP  
glee@perkinscoie.com

PATENT OWNER:

Richard Baker  
New England Intellectual Property  
rbaker@newenglandip.com

Steven K. Martin  
Altman & Martin  
smartin@altmartlaw.com

[Trials@uspto.gov](mailto:Trials@uspto.gov)  
571-272-7822

Paper 47  
Entered: June 19, 2019

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

---

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

---

BALLY GAMING, INC., DBA BALLY TECHNOLOGIES,  
Petitioner,

v.

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.  
Patent Owner.

---

Case CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

---

Before FRANCES L. IPPOLITO, KEVIN W. CHERRY, and  
CHRISTOPHER G. PAULRAJ, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

IPPOLITO, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

FINAL WRITTEN DECISION  
*35 U.S.C. § 318(a) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.73*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

## I. INTRODUCTION

Petitioner, Bally Gaming, Inc., DBA Bally Technologies, filed a Petition seeking a covered business method (“CBM”) patent review of claims 1–12 of U.S. Patent No. 7,451,987 B1 (Ex. 1001, “the ’987 patent”), pursuant to § 18 of the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act (“AIA”). Paper 2 (“Pet.”). Patent Owner, New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc., filed a Preliminary Response (Paper 6, “Prelim. Resp.”) opposing institution of a review. At the pre-institution stage, the parties disputed whether Petitioner had sufficient standing to request a CBM patent review at the time of filing the Petition. *See* Pet. 7–9; Prelim. Resp. 11. We authorized briefing by the parties to address Petitioner’s standing prior to institution. *See* Paper 10; Paper 13; Paper 18.

On June 22, 2018, we instituted a CBM patent review on the sole asserted ground that claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent are directed to non-statutory subject matter under 35 U.S.C. § 101 as set forth in the Petition. Paper 19 (“Dec.”). After institution of trial, Patent Owner filed a Patent Owner Response (Paper 28, “PO Resp.”) and Petitioner filed a Reply (Paper 35, “Reply”). With authorization, Patent Owner filed a Sur-Reply (Paper 39, “Sur.”).

Patent Owner also filed a Motion to Amend (Paper 27, “Mot. Amend”). Petitioner filed an Opposition to Patent Owner’s Motion to Amend (“Opp. Amend”), and Patent Owner filed a Reply to Petitioner’s Opposition (“Reply Amend”). Papers 30–31. Further, after authorization, Petitioner filed a Sur-Reply to Patent Owner’s Reply (Paper 36, “Sur. Amend”).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

An oral hearing was held on March 19, 2019. Paper 46 (“Tr.”).

We have jurisdiction under 35 U.S.C. § 6. This Final Written Decision is issued pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 328(a) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.73. In this Final Written Decision, after reviewing all relevant evidence and assertions, we determine that Petitioner has met its burden of showing, by a preponderance of the evidence, that claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent are unpatentable.

In addition, we deny Patent Owner’s Contingent Motion to Amend to replace claims 3–8 with substitute claims 13–18.

A. *Related Matters*

The parties represent that they are involved in a lawsuit alleging a breach of an existing patent license agreement in *New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming, Inc.*, 2:17-cv-1559 (D. Nev. June 2, 2017) (“Nevada Suit”). Pet. 7–9; *see* Paper 5, 2. Further, related U.S. Patent No. 7,325,806 B1 is the subject of a CBM patent review between the same parties in CBM2018-00005. *See* Paper 5, 2.

B. *The ’987 Patent*

The ’987 patent is directed generally to a method of playing a bonus wager in a card game. Ex. 1001, (54). The ’987 patent further describes the invention as “a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a face up card from each hand of a group of hands of a base [card] game.” Ex. 1001, 2:51–53. Referring to Figures 1 and 3 (reproduced below), the ’987 patent teaches that on playing surfaces 10, 12, central dealer position 20 has a plurality of player hand locations 22, one for each player hand to be dealt. *Id.* at 3:41–51.

CBM2018-00006  
 Patent 7,451,987 B1

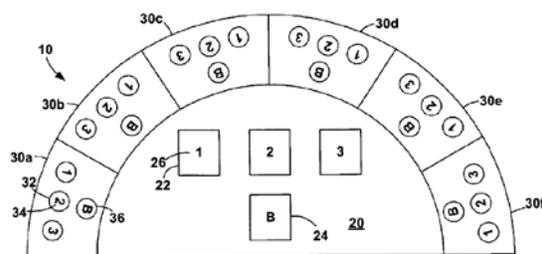


FIG. 1

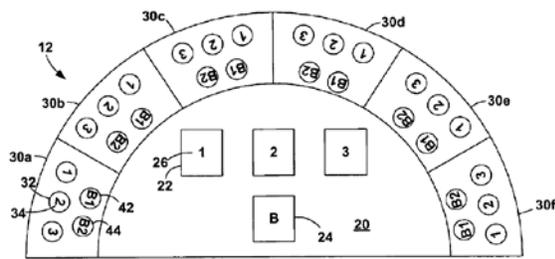


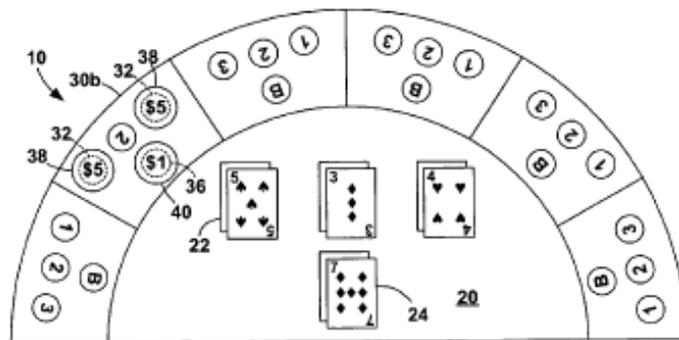
FIG. 3

Figures 1 and 3 show a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand. *Id.* at 2:34–36, 38–40.

As shown in Figures 1 and 3, dealer position 20 has banker hand location 24 for the banker hand. *Id.* at 3:50–53. Symbols 26 at each player hand location 22 are the player hand identifiers, which are typically numerals running sequentially from “1”. *Id.* at 3:53–55. According to these figures, “[e]ach player position 30 includes a symbol 32 containing a player hand identifier 34 corresponding to each player hand location 22. Ex. 1001, 3:58–60. The ’987 patent provides that the example of Figure 1 has a single bonus wager symbol 36 for one bonus and the example of Figure 3 as two bonus wager symbols 42, 44 for two bonuses. Ex. 1001, 3:64–67.

To play the game, each player chooses the player hand or hands that she thinks will beat the banker hand in the base game. Ex. 1001, 4:1–3. Figure 2 is provided below to better illustrate the described game.

CBM2018-00006  
 Patent 7,451,987 B1



**FIG. 2**

Figure 2 shows a table layout of Figure 1 with a blackjack hand dealt. *Id.* at 2:37–38. In Figure 2, the selections are made by placing the amount to be wagered on the corresponding player hand identifier symbol 32 of the player position 30. *Id.* at 4:3–5. The wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers. *Id.* at 5:2–7. In the example of Figure 2, the player at the second player position 30b (player 2) has placed a \$5 chip 38 on each identifier symbol 32 for player hands 1 and 3, wagering that player hands 1 and 3 will beat the dealer hand. Ex. 1001, 4:7–11.

To participate in a bonus wager, the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location. Ex. 1001, 4:15–18. After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of hands. *Id.* at 4:31–32. The bonus hand of the present invention is composed of at least one card from each player hand. Ex. 1001, 4:41–42. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand and the banker hand(s). Ex. 1001, 4:53–54. The bonus hand may be compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the bonus hand is a winning hand and the player placing a bonus wager is a winner. Ex. 1001, 5:5–7.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*C. Illustrative Claim*

Of the challenged claims 1–12, claim 1 is independent. Independent claim 1, reproduced below, is illustrative of the claimed subject matter:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:

(a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;

(b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;

(c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;

(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and

(e) paying said winning player a payout.

Ex. 1001, 6:57–67.

*D. Instituted Ground of Unpatentability*

We instituted review on the sole asserted ground—that claims 1–12 of the '987 patent are unpatentable because these claims are directed to patent-ineligible subject matter under § 101. Dec. 33.

II. ANALYSIS

*A. Claim Construction*

Petitioner proposes constructions for the terms “wager,” “payout,” “card,” “deck of cards,” and “hand.” Pet. 21–22. For the purposes of this Decision, we determine that no express claim construction of any claim term is necessary. *Nidec Motor Corp. v. Zhongshan Broad Ocean Motor Co. Ltd.*, 868 F.3d 1013, 1017 (Fed. Cir. 2017 (only terms in controversy must be construed and only to the extent necessary to resolve the controversy)).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*B. Forum Selection Clause*

Before institution, Patent Owner argued that a forum selection clause in a settlement agreement (Ex. 2006<sup>1</sup>, “Agreement”) between the parties, under which Petitioner was granted a license to the ’987 patent and U.S. Patent No. 7,325,806 B1 (“the ’806 patent”), requires all disputes be handled in the courts in the State of Nevada. Prelim. Resp. 7–8; Ex. 2006, 1. According to Patent Owner, Petitioner waived its opportunity to seek review by the Board because Section 13.f of the settlement agreement states:

“In the event of any dispute between any of the parties that cannot be resolved amicably, the parties agree and consent to the exclusive jurisdiction of an appropriate state or federal court located within the State of Nevada, Clark County, to resolve any such dispute.”

Ex. 2006, 7.

Based on the preliminary record, we observed that Patent Owner had not identified any controlling authority—such as by statute, rule, or binding precedent—that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. Dec. 8–11. For example, section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we noted that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). *Id.* We did not agree with

---

<sup>1</sup> Exhibit 2006 is a redacted public version of Exhibit 2005.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Patent Owner that any portion of chapter 32, § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, explicitly provides for a contractual estoppel defense. *See id.*

In the post-institution briefing, neither party has added arguments or evidence to the record regarding this issue. We recognize, however, that the Federal Circuit in a recent non-precedential case affirmed a district court's grant of a preliminary injunction requiring a petitioner to withdraw its PTAB petitions in light of a forum selection clause. *Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*, No. 2018-1724, 2019 WL 1758481, at \*4 (Fed. Cir. Apr. 18, 2019) (non-precedential). But, unlike the facts and procedural posture of that case, we do not have before us any court order requiring the Petition in this proceeding to be withdrawn. The Board is neither bound by the party's Agreement, nor do we have independent jurisdiction to resolve any contractual dispute between the parties over the forum selection clause in that Agreement.

Thus, based on the complete record, we maintain our determination that Patent Owner has not established any alleged contractual estoppel arising from the forum selection clause bars this proceeding.

*C. Covered Business Method Patent Review Standing*

Under § 18(a)(1)(B) of the America Invents Act (AIA), “[a] person may not file a petition for a transitional proceeding with respect to a covered business method patent unless the person or the person’s real party in interest or privy has been sued for infringement of the patent or has been charged with infringement under that patent.” AIA § 18(a)(1)(B) (emphasis added); *see also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a).

Prior to institution, the parties disputed whether Petitioner had

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

sufficient standing to request a CBM patent review at the time of filing the Petition. *See* Pet. 7–8; Prelim. Resp. 11. Following supplemental briefing on this issue by the parties, we determined that the circumstances of the parties’ past relationship regarding allegations of infringement, the Agreement (Ex. 2006), and the parties’ current dispute of the same Agreement in district court were sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish Petitioner’s CBM patent review standing under relevant case law. Dec. 11–19; *see* Papers 10, 13, 18.

More specifically, Petitioner’s standing under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a) is based on Patent Owner’s accusation that Bally breached the Agreement, i.e., the license dispute and the breach of contract action in the Nevada Suit. In the Nevada Suit, Petitioner responded to Patent Owner’s “complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the ’987 patent is invalid.” Pet. 7. In the Petitioner’s Reply to Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response, Petitioner argued that the Nevada Suit in federal district court already includes Petitioner’s declaratory judgment counterclaim for patent invalidity, which Patent Owner had not moved to dismiss. Paper 13, 3. Further, Petitioner asserted separately that it was charged with infringement at the time the Petition was filed in December 2017 because Petitioner did not renew the Agreement after the expiration of the initial term (on May 28, 2017) and a real and substantial controversy about infringement existed at the time of filing of the Petition. *Id.* at 4–5. Petitioner argued that the same dispute regarding infringement that had been resolved by the Agreement

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

arose again when the Agreement expired because Petitioner's post-expiration activities are not covered by the license. *Id.* (citing Ex. 1007, 1).

In its Preliminary Response, Patent Owner maintained that it has not charged Petitioner with infringement because the royalties from the Agreement "are not based on infringement but on the term and the use of a specific game." Prelim. Resp. 12. Patent Owner asserted it had not revoked the license to Petitioner and, thus, "[b]ecause Bally's products are covered by a license under the settlement agreement (Exhibit NVG2005), they do not infringe." Prelim. Resp. 13–15. Patent Owner further argued that the breach of contract action in the Nevada Suit is not an infringement suit. Prelim. Resp. 14–15.

On the preliminary record, we determined that Petitioner had established sufficiently that it has standing to bring a covered business method patent review. Dec. 14–19. Referring to *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, 549 U.S. 118 (2007), we determined that Petitioner's standing does not hinge on whether the Agreement has terminated or expired. Looking to the relationship between the parties, we found that the parties agree that the Agreement between the parties arose from Patent Owner's intent to enforce the '987 patent and the '806 patent against the Petitioner. Dec. 17–18 (citing Ex. 1024, 3; Paper 13, 5). Patent Owner acknowledged that prior to the Agreement, Patent Owner "accused Defendant [Bally] of using games subject to these Patents; and . . . Defendant asserted the Patents were invalid." Ex. 1024, 4. While those past events were allegedly resolved by the execution of the Agreement, we, nonetheless, took into consideration that the parties' past relationship gives

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

context for the current disputes between parties. In particular, there remained a dispute as to whether the Agreement and license to the '806 patent and the '987 patent is still in effect; whether Petitioner's products/activities infringe; and whether the patents are valid. *See* Prelim. Resp. 13–15; Paper 13, 3–5; Paper 18, 3–5. Thus, we determined that the current disputes between the parties are rooted in the original allegations of infringement that led to the signing of the Agreement in the first place. Dec. 17–19. Accordingly, taking into account the full relationship between the parties and the particular circumstances in this case, we determined that Patent Owner's statements and actions are sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish standing under relevant case law. *Id.*

At this stage, the record in this proceeding has not changed regarding the parties' positions on this issue. For example, Patent Owner's Response and Sur-reply do not discuss standing. *See generally* PO Resp., Sur. Thus, based on the complete record, we maintain our determination that Petitioner has established standing to file a petition for a CBM patent review of the '987 patent based on the arguments and evidence discussed in the Decision on Institution.<sup>2</sup> *See* Dec. 13–19.

---

<sup>2</sup> In the Petition, Petitioner also asserts that it is not estopped from filing this Petition because neither Bally, nor any real party in interest or privy, has previously challenged the patentability of the claims of the '987 patent. Pet. 8–9. And Petitioner asserts that it is not barred from filing this petition under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(c) because it has not filed a civil action challenging the validity of any claim of this patent, and its counterclaim of invalidity does not constitute a civil action challenging the validity of a claim of the '987 patent. *Id.*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*D. Covered Business Method Patent Eligibility*

Section 18(d)(1) of the AIA defines a covered business method patent as “a patent that claims a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service, except that the term does not include patents for technological inventions.” *See also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(a) (stating the same). To determine whether a patent is a covered business method patent, “§ 18(d)(1) directs us to examine the claims when deciding whether a patent is a [covered business method] patent.” *Blue Calypso, LLC v. Groupon, Inc.*, 815 F.3d 1331, 1340 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (stating that “the claims at issue in the instant case have an express financial component in the form of a subsidy, or financial inducement, that encourages consumers to participate in the distribution of advertisements”); *Unwired Planet, LLC v. Google, Inc.*, 841 F.3d 1376, 1382 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“CBM patents are limited to those with claims that are directed to methods and apparatuses of particular types and with particular uses ‘in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.’”).

*1. Used in the Practice, Administration, or Management of a Financial Product or Service*

In the Decision on Institution, we determined that the ’987 patent is eligible for CBM review. Dec. 19–24. More particularly, we determined that the claimed method recited in claim 1 is expressly directed to the financial service of placing bonus wagers and paying winning players payouts based on a game of chance with a deck of cards. *See id.* at 20–21.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Patent Owner does not address whether the '987 patent “claims a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.” *See generally*, Prelim. Resp.; PO Resp.; Sur.

Based on the complete record, we determine that at least claim 1 of the '987 patent expressly recites a method for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service. Claim 1 explicitly recites a method of playing a game that involves the placement of a “bonus wager” and “paying” a “winning player a payout.” Ex. 1001, claim 1. The disclosure of the '987 patent is consistent with our reading of the claim language. *See* Ex. 1001, 3:16–32, 4:5–7, 4:15–17, 4:23–31, 5:40–49. Additionally, the claimed method is not merely “incidental to” or “complementary to” a financial activity because the claims are expressly directed to the placement of a “bonus wager” and “paying” a “winning player a payout.” *See Unwired Planet, LLC v. Google Inc.*, 841 F.3d 1376, 1382 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

Therefore, we determine that at least one claim of the '987 patent is directed to “a method . . . for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.” AIA § 18(d)(1).

## 2. *Technological Invention*

Under AIA § 18(d)(1), “the term ‘covered business method patent’ . . . does not include patents for technological inventions.” Per 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b), “[i]n determining whether a patent is for a technological invention,” we consider “whether [1] the claimed subject matter as a whole recites a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art,

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

and [2] solves a technical problem using a technical solution,” respectively, the first and second prongs of the technical invention exception.

In general, the Office Patent Trial Practice Guide, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,756 (Aug. 14, 2012) (“TPG”), provides the following guidance with respect to claim content that typically does not exclude a patent from the category of a technological invention:

(a) Mere recitation of known technologies, such as computer hardware, communication or computer networks, software, memory, computer-readable storage medium, scanners, display devices or databases, or specialized machines, such as an ATM or point of sale device.

(b) Reciting the use of known prior art technology to accomplish a process or method, even if the process or method is novel and non-obvious.

(c) Combining prior art structures to achieve the normal, expected, or predictable result of that combination.

*Id.* at 48,763–64.

Based on the complete record, we determine that the ’987 patent does not recite any technological elements and is not directed to any technological invention. With regard to the first prong of § 42.301(b), we determine that the ’987 patent does not claim a technological feature that is novel and nonobvious over the prior art. The express language of the claims, such as claim 1, recites physical aspects such as cards and non-physical aspects such as the steps for players to play a card game and place a wager or receive a “payout,” or a “predetermined rank,” etc. Ex. 1001, claim 1. Moreover, the Specification contemplates a game played with physical playing cards on a physical table with a live dealer. *See e.g.*, Ex. 1001, 3:4–5:55. According to the ’987 patent, playing card games, use of bonus wagers, and ranking for

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

payout were known and conventional. Ex. 1001, 1:39–43 (“Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player’s hand is compared to the banker’s hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player’s hand.”); *id.* at 2:55–60 (“There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand.”). Thus, according to the ’987 patent itself, these features are not novel or nonobvious technological features. Patent Owner does not address specifically whether the challenged claims are for a technological invention. *See generally* PO Resp.; Sur.

Given this determination, we need not reach the second prong of whether the claim solves a technical problem using a technical solution. Based on the foregoing, we determine that the ’987 patent is not exempt from CBM review based on a “technological invention” exception under 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b).

### 3. *Conclusion—A Covered Business Method Patent*

A single claim is sufficient to institute a covered business method patent review because § 18(d)(1) of the AIA indicates a patent is eligible for review if the subject matter of at least one claim is directed to a covered business method. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 324(a); Final Rule, 77 Fed. Reg. at 48,736 (Response to Comment 8). In view of the foregoing, we determine that the ’987 patent is a covered business method patent under AIA § 18(d)(1).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*E. Level of Ordinary Skill in the Art*

Patent Owner asserts that the skilled artisan is someone with some high school education who has worked in the gaming industry. PO Resp. 16. Petitioner does not contest Patent Owner’s proposed level of ordinary skill in the art. Tr. 5:17–18:1.

Based on the complete record, we adopt and apply Patent Owner’s definition of the level of ordinary skill because we are satisfied that this definition comports with the level of skill necessary to understand and implement the teachings of the ’987 patent. *See* Ex. 1001, 1:22–25 (“The present invention relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands.”); *see* Ex. 2007 ¶ 3.

*F. Law of Patent-Eligible Subject Matter Under 35 U.S.C. § 101*

An invention is patent-eligible if it claims a “new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter.” 35 U.S.C. § 101. However, the Supreme Court has long interpreted 35 U.S.C. § 101 to include implicit exceptions: “[l]aws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas” are not patentable. *E.g., Alice Corp. v. CLS Bank Int’l*, 573 U.S. 208, 216 (2014).

In determining whether a claim falls within an excluded category, we are guided by the Supreme Court’s two-step framework, described in *Mayo* and *Alice*. *Id.* at 217–18 (citing *Mayo Collaborative Servs. v. Prometheus Labs., Inc.*, 566 U.S. 66, 75–77 (2012)). In accordance with that framework, we first determine what concept the claim is “directed to.” *See Alice*, 573 U.S. at 219 (“On their face, the claims before us are drawn to the concept of intermediated settlement, i.e., the use of a third party to mitigate settlement

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

risk.”); *see also Bilski v. Kappos*, 561 U.S. 593, 611 (2010) (“Claims 1 and 4 in petitioners’ application explain the basic concept of hedging, or protecting against risk.”).

Concepts determined to be abstract ideas, and thus patent ineligible, include certain methods of organizing human activity, such as fundamental economic practices (*Alice*, 573 U.S. at 219–20; *Bilski*, 561 U.S. at 611); mathematical formulas (*Parker v. Flook*, 437 U.S. 584, 594–95 (1978)); and mental processes (*Gottschalk v. Benson*, 409 U.S. 63, 69 (1972)). Concepts determined to be patent eligible include physical and chemical processes, such as “molding rubber products” (*Diamond v. Diehr*, 450 U.S. 175, 191 (1981)); “tanning, dyeing, making water-proof cloth, vulcanizing India rubber, smelting ores” (*id.* at 182 n.7 (quoting *Corning v. Burden*, 56 U.S. 252, 267–68 (1853))); and manufacturing flour (*Benson*, 409 U.S. at 69 (citing *Cochrane v. Deener*, 94 U.S. 780, 785 (1876))).

In *Diehr*, the claim at issue recited a mathematical formula, but the Supreme Court held that “[a] claim drawn to subject matter otherwise statutory does not become nonstatutory simply because it uses a mathematical formula.” *Diehr*, 450 U.S. at 176; *see also id.* at 191 (“We view respondents’ claims as nothing more than a process for molding rubber products and not as an attempt to patent a mathematical formula.”). Having said that, the Supreme Court also indicated that a claim “seeking patent protection for that formula in the abstract . . . is not accorded the protection of our patent laws, . . . and this principle cannot be circumvented by attempting to limit the use of the formula to a particular technological environment.” *Id.* (citing *Benson* and *Flook*); *see, e.g., id.* at 187 (“It is now

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

commonplace that an *application* of a law of nature or mathematical formula to a known structure or process may well be deserving of patent protection.”).

If the claim is “directed to” an abstract idea, we turn to the second step of the *Alice* and *Mayo* framework, where “we must examine the elements of the claim to determine whether it contains an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 221 (quotation marks omitted). “A claim that recites an abstract idea must include ‘additional features’ to ensure ‘that the [claim] is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the [abstract idea].’” *Id.* (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 77). “[M]erely requir[ing] generic computer implementation[] fail[s] to transform that abstract idea into a patent-eligible invention.” *Id.*

*G. USPTO 2019 Revised Patent Subject Matter Eligibility Guidance*

The PTO recently published revised guidance on the application of § 101. *See* 2019 Revised Patent Subject Matter Eligibility Guidance, 84 Fed. Reg. 50 (Jan. 7, 2019) (“*Guidance*”). Under the *Guidance*, we first look to whether the claim recites:

- (1) any judicial exceptions, including certain groupings of abstract ideas (i.e., mathematical concepts, certain methods of organizing human activity such as a fundamental economic practice, or mental processes); and
  - (2) additional elements that integrate the judicial exception into a practical application (see MPEP § 2106.05(a)–(c), (e)–(h)).
- See Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 51–55. Only if a claim (1) recites a judicial exception and (2) does not integrate that exception into a practical

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

application, do we then look to whether the claim:

(3) adds a specific limitation beyond the judicial exception that is not “well-understood, routine, conventional” in the field (*see* MPEP § 2106.05(d)); or

(4) simply appends well-understood, routine, conventional activities previously known to the industry, specified at a high level of generality, to the judicial exception.

*See id.* at 56.

*H. Subject Matter Eligibility of Challenged Claims Under § 101*

Petitioner asserts claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent recite patent ineligible subject matter under § 101. Patent Owner disagrees that the challenged claims are patent ineligible, and relies on the Declaration of John Feola (Exhibit 2007). We follow the framework set forth in the *Guidance* for our analysis.

*1. Guidance Step 1*

Under the *Guidance*, we first must determine “whether the claim is to a statutory category (Step 1).” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. Here, it is undisputed that the claims recite a statutory *process*, namely the process of playing a game with a deck of cards. *See* Ex. 1001, 6:61–8:13.

*2. Guidance Step 2A, Prong 1: Whether Challenged Claims Recite an Abstract Idea*

Under the next step in the *Guidance* (Step 2A, Prong 1), we must determine whether the claims recite limitations that fall within any of the recognized categories of abstract ideas. The *Guidance* identifies certain groupings of abstract ideas that have been recognized under the case law: mathematical concepts, certain methods of organizing human activity, such as fundamental economic principles or practices, and mental processes. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52. As part of this inquiry, we must examine the

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

relevant limitations in the context of the claim language as a whole. *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 218 n.3. “The § 101 inquiry must focus on the language of the [a]sserted [c]laims themselves.” *Synopsys, Inc. v. Mentor Graphics Corp.*, 839 F.3d 1138, 1149 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *Accenture Global Servs., GmbH v. Guidewire Software, Inc.*, 728 F.3d 1336, 1345 (Fed. Cir. 2013) (admonishing that “the important inquiry for a § 101 analysis is to look to the claim”); *see also Content Extraction & Transmission LLC v. Wells Fargo Bank, Nat’l Ass’n*, 776 F.3d 1343, 1346 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (“We focus here on whether the claims of the asserted patents fall within the excluded category of abstract ideas.”). “An abstract idea can generally be described at different levels of abstraction.” *Apple, Inc. v. Ameranth, Inc.*, 842 F.3d 1229, 1240 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Yet our reviewing court has cautioned that characterizing claims at a “high level of abstraction and untethered from the language of the claims all but ensures that the exceptions to § 101 swallow the rule.” *Enfish, LLC v. Microsoft Corp.*, 822 F.3d 1327, 1337 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

*a. Petitioner’s Contentions*

Petitioner argues that the challenged claims<sup>3</sup> are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game. Pet. 24–26. Petitioner relies primarily on the Federal Circuit decision in *In re Smith*, 815

---

<sup>3</sup> Petitioner treats independent claim 1 as representative and asserts that the “dependent claims add minor variations on the rules set out in independent claim 1, such as limiting the bonus hand to a poker hand, awarding a payout as a multiple of the bonus wager, and forming the bonus hand from cards that are dealt face up.” Pet. 24–25; *see also* Tr. 8:20–22 (“There is no dispute that Claim 1 of each of the challenged patents is representative of all the claims -- all the challenged claims.”).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

F.3d 816 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“*Smith*”), which according to Petitioner, held that rules for playing wagering-based card games are abstract. *Id.* at 25.

Petitioner acknowledges that in *Smith*, the Federal Circuit commented that claims directed to conducting a game using a new or original deck of cards could potentially survive step two of *Alice*. *See* Reply 8–9; Tr. 8:5–10.

However, Petitioner asserts that the claims of the ’987 patent “do not involve anything like a new or original deck of cards. Instead, they simply involve a bonus wager that suffers from the same defects as the claims in *Smith*—it is an abstract idea, because it is only ‘a set of rules for a game’ and is a *fundamental economic practice*.” Reply 9 (emphasis added).

Additionally, following our authorization, Petitioner submitted the Federal Circuit decision in *In re Marco Guldenaar Holding B.V.*, 911 F.3d 1157 (Fed. Cir. 2018) (“*Guldenaar*”). Paper 32; Paper 32; Exhibit 1038. The decision in *Guldenaar*, upholding the Board’s affirmance of a §101 rejection, issued on December 28, 2018, after Petitioner submitted its Reply to Patent Owner’s Response. At the oral hearing, Petitioner commented that *Guldenaar* calls into question the “dictum” in *Smith* because “*Guldenaar* on its facts involved a new set of dice -- a game -- rules for a game involving a new set of dice, not conventional dice.” Tr. 8:11–15.

*b. Patent Owner’s Contentions*

In its Patent Owner Response and Sur-reply to Petitioner’s Reply, Patent Owner does not directly address whether the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea under *Alice* Step 1 or the *Guidance* Step 2A,

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Prong 1. *See* Sur. 5–8 (addressing case-law and *Guidance* Step 2B).<sup>4</sup> Patent Owner does, however, assert that *Smith* and the other cases relied upon by Petitioner are not controlling. *See* Sur. 6–8. Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is distinguishable because the decision does not address the applicable level of ordinary skill, evidence related to what is “well-understood, routine and conventional,”<sup>5</sup> or evidence of the commercial significance of the invention. PO Resp. 19 (citing *Berkheimer v. HP*, 881 F.3d 1360 (Fed. Cir. 2018)). Patent Owner also asserts that, unlike the *Smith* claims, the steps recited in claim 1 of the ’987 patent of “(c) forming a bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands; (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank” are significantly more than what was known in the art in 2004. PO Resp. 19 (citing Ex. 2011). Further, Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is an appeal from a patent examiner’s rejection and the Board’s affirmance of that rejection, which is different from the posture here where the patent examiner determined during prosecution that the

---

<sup>4</sup> We note that the *Guidance* issued after both Patent Owner’s Response and Petitioner’s Reply had been submitted. Nonetheless, both parties were afforded an opportunity to request supplemental briefing to address the *Guidance*. Both parties declined to do so. *See* Paper 32, 3.

<sup>5</sup> The *Guidance* advises that the “*Alice* Step 1” (*Guidance* Step 2A) analysis should exclude consideration of whether additional claim elements represent well-understood, routine, and conventional activity. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 55. “[R]evised Step 2A specifically excludes consideration of whether the additional elements represent well-understood, routine, conventional activity. Instead, analysis of well-understood, routine, conventional activity is done in Step 2B.” *Id.*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

claims included allowable patent-eligible subject matter. PO Resp. 19–20. To the extent these arguments apply to our discussion of *Alice* Step 1 and *Guidance* Step 2A, Prong 1, we address these arguments in this section.

*c. Discussion*

For the reasons discussed below, we determine that the challenged claims recite a judicial exception recognized under the *Guidance* and in prior cases as an abstract idea.

Turning to claim 1, the following specific limitations recite the steps or *rules* for playing a bonus wagering game. Claim 1 recites a “method of playing game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of “(a) affording a player the opportunity to *place a bonus wager*; (b) *dealing out said cards* to each of a plurality of hands; (c) *forming a bonus hand* from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands; (d) *identifying said player as a winning player* if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and (e) *paying said winning player a payout*.” Ex. 1001, 6:57–67 (emphasis added).

Dependent claims 2–12 recite additional features for gameplay, including which cards the bonus hand is formed from (claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9), the makeup of the plurality of hands (claims 3 and 6), and how the bonus wager/payout is paid (claims 10–12). For example, claim 2 additionally recites “wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.” As another example, claim 3 recites “wherein said hands are player hands.” And, claim 10 recites “wherein said payout is a multiple of said bonus wager.” Thus, each of claims 1–12 recites instructions or rules for playing a wagering game.

Our reading of the challenged claims is consistent with the

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Specification of the '987 patent. The Specification provides that the described invention is directed to a “method of playing a bonus wager” (Ex. 1001, Title), and “relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands.” Ex. 1001, 1:25–28. Further, the Specification describes the mechanics of game play, which involve the house determination of

the *rules with which the game will be played*, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands, the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

Ex. 1001, 3:33–39 (emphasis added). Thus, consistent with our reading of the claims, the '987 patent describes the invention as a set of “rules” that are determined for how the bonus wagering game will be played.

With this in mind, we agree with Petitioner that the Federal Circuit has found similar methods of conducting a wagering game to constitute a fundamental economic practice under the first step of *Alice*. In *Smith*, the Applicants appealed an ex parte decision by the Board that affirmed the examiner’s rejection of pending claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Claim 1 at issue in *Smith* recited:

1. A method of conducting a wagering game comprising:
  - [a] ) a dealer providing at least one deck of ... physical playing cards and shuffling the physical playing cards to form a random set of physical playing cards;
  - [b] ) the dealer accepting at least one first wager from each participating player on a player game hand against a banker’s/dealer’s hand;

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

[c] ) the dealer dealing only two cards from the random set of physical playing cards to each designated player and two cards to the banker/dealer such that the designated player and the banker/dealer receive the same number of exactly two random physical playing cards;

[d] ) the dealer examining respective hands to determine in any hand has a Natural 0 count from totaling count from cards, defined as the first two random physical playing cards in a hand being a pair of 5's, 10's, jacks, queens or kings;

[e] ) the dealer resolving any player versus dealer wagers between each individual player hand that has a Natural 0 count and between the dealer hand and all player hands where a Natural 0 is present in the dealer hand, while the dealer exposes only a single card to the players;

[f] ) as between each player and the dealer where neither hand has a Natural 0, the dealer allowing each player to elect to take a maximum of one additional card or standing pat on the initial two card player hand, while still having seen only one dealer card;

[g] ) the dealer/banker remaining pat within a first certain predetermined total counts and being required to take a single hit within a second predetermined total counts, where the first total counts range does not overlap the second total counts range;

[h] ) after all possible additional random physical playing cards have been dealt, the dealer comparing a value of each designated player's hand to a final value of the banker's/dealer's hand wherein said value of the designated player's hand and the banker's/dealer's hand is in a range of zero to nine points based on a pre-established scoring system wherein aces count as one point, tens and face cards count as zero points and all other cards count as their face value and wherein a two-digit hand total is deemed to have a value corresponding to the one's digit of the two-digit total;

[i] ) the dealer resolving the wagers based on whether the designated player's hand or the banker's/dealer's hand is nearest to a value of 0.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*Smith*, 815 F.3d at 817–818. Applying the first step of *Alice*, the Federal Circuit determined that

Applicants’ claims, directed to rules for conducting a wagering game, compare to other “fundamental economic practice[s]” found abstract by the Supreme Court. *See id.* As the Board reasoned here, “[a] wagering game is, effectively, a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations based on probabilities created during the distribution of the cards.” J.A. 15. In *Alice*, the Supreme Court held that a method of exchanging financial obligations was drawn to an abstract idea. 134 S. Ct. at 2356–57. Likewise, in *Bilski*, the Court determined that a claim to a method of hedging risk was directed to an abstract idea. 561 U.S. at 611, 130 S. Ct. 3218. Here, Applicants’ claimed “method of conducting a wagering game” is drawn to an abstract idea much like *Alice*’s method of exchanging financial obligations and *Bilski*’s method of hedging risk.

*Id.* at 818–819 (emphasis added).

As in *Smith*, the claims of the ’987 patent are also drawn to rules and instructions for playing a wagering game, which is effectively a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations (e.g., payout of bonus wagers) based on probabilities created during the distribution of cards. Thus, similar to the claims at issue in *Smith*, claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent recite a fundamental economic practice, which is one of certain methods of organizing human activity identified in the *Guidance*, and thus considered an abstract idea.

The Federal Circuit’s decision in *Guldenaar* further guides our analysis. In *Guldenaar*, the appellant appealed an ex parte decision by the Board affirming the examiner’s rejection of pending claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Claim 1 at issue in *Guldenaar* recited:

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

A method of playing a dice game comprising:

providing a set of dice, the set of dice comprising a first die, a second die, and a third die, wherein only a single face of the first die has a first die marking, wherein only two faces of the second die have an identical second die marking, and wherein only three faces of the third die have an identical third die marking;

placing at least one wager on at least one of the following: that the first die marking on the first die will appear face up, that the second die marking on the second die will appear face up, that the third die marking on the third die will appear face up, or any combination thereof;

rolling the set of dice; and

paying a payout amount if the at least one wager occurs.

*Guldenaar*, 911 F.3d at 1159.

The Federal Circuit Court began its analysis, under *Alice* Step 1, by comparing the claims with those in *Smith*. *Id.* at 1160 (Noting that “*In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816 (Fed. Cir. 2016), is highly instructive in this case.”).

The Court found that

Appellant’s claimed “method of playing a dice game,” including placing wagers on whether certain die faces will appear face up, is, as with the claimed invention in *Smith*, directed to a method of conducting a wagering game, with the probabilities based on dice rather than on cards. Given the strong similarities to the ineligible claims in *Smith*, Appellant’s claims likewise are drawn to an abstract idea.

*Id.* The Federal Circuit noted that the Patent Office articulated a more refined characterization of the abstract idea as the *rules for playing games*, which is one type of method of organizing human activity. *Id.*

Like the claims at issue in *Guldenaar*, we find that the challenged claims of the ’987 patent also recite *rules for playing a game*, specifically rules for playing a wagering game, which the Federal Circuit has determined

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

is another method of organizing human activity that is patent-ineligible. *See id.* That being the case, we determine that the challenged claims recite *both* a fundamental economic practice and rules for playing games. We note that our determination is consistent with the *Guidance*, which identifies among the certain methods of organizing human activity both “fundamental economic principles or practices” and “managing personal behavior or relationships or interactions between people (including social activities, teaching, and following rules or instructions).” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52 n. 13 (citing *Smith*).

In reaching these determinations, we have also considered Patent Owner’s arguments that *Smith* is distinguishable. *See* PO Resp. 19. First, Patent Owner asserts that *Smith* is distinguishable because that court did not review evidence regarding the level of ordinary skill in the art. PO Resp. 19 (“*Smith* did not address the skill level in the skilled artisan, as required after *Berkheimer*.”). Nonetheless, for *Alice* Step 1, our inquiry is the same as that performed by the Federal Circuit in *Smith*. That is, we consider whether the claims at issue are directed to a patent-ineligible concept such as an abstract idea. Patent Owner has not explained sufficiently, nor do we independently see, how any evidence or arguments regarding the level of ordinary skill in the art in this proceeding distinguishes the course of our analysis under *Alice* Step 1 from that performed in *Smith*. Moreover, as discussed above, the level of ordinary skill is not in dispute between the parties in this proceeding. Tr. 5:17–18:1. We have already adopted Patent Owner’s proposed level of skill. Thus, our discussion of the level of skill is limited to adopting the level of skill that Petitioner and Patent Owner have both agreed

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

to, which we determine is consistent with the disclosure of the '987 patent. As such, we are not persuaded that there is any meaningful difference in this regard between *Smith* and the instant proceeding that distinguishes *Smith*.

Second, Patent Owner has not explained sufficiently how evidence of the “commercial significance of the invention” distinguishes *Smith*.<sup>6</sup> See PO Resp. 18–19. Patent Owner contends that its settlement agreement and license with Petitioner, and the successful implementation of games covered by the patent in many casinos demonstrate commercial success. *Id.* at 18 (citing Ex. 2004; Ex. 2005; Ex. 2007; Ex. 2011). Even assuming that the '987 patent is commercially successful or significant, as Patent Owner proposes, we are not persuaded this would render the claims of the '987 patent any less abstract under *Alice*, Step 1 (and *Guidance*, Step 2A, Prong 1). “Commercial success is not necessarily a proxy for an improvement in a technology nor does it necessarily indicate that claims were drawn to patent eligible subject matter.” *Versata Dev. Grp., Inc. v. SAP Am., Inc.*, 793 F.3d 1306, 1335 (Fed. Cir. 2015). As discussed, the challenged claims explicitly recite features that are rules/instructions for organizing human activities (i.e., fundamental economic practice and rules of playing a game). Patent Owner has not explained persuasively why the license agreement, settlement, and casino games mitigate or alter this reading of the express language and limitations recited in the challenged claims. See PO Resp. 19. Thus, we are not persuaded that we must read the claims differently due to any purported

---

<sup>6</sup> Patent Owner also asserts that the “significance of the improvement found in the '987 patent over 2004 gaming technology is evident in the commercial success of the patent.” PO Resp. 18. We also address this argument in our discussion of *Alice* Step 2, *Guidance* Step 2B.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

commercial success or that *Smith* is distinguishable on this basis.

Third, Patent Owner asserts that, unlike the *Smith* claims, the steps of “(c) forming a bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands” (“Step C”); and “(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank” (Step D”), recited in claim 1, are significantly more than what was known in the art in 2004. PO Resp. 19 (citing Ex. 2011).

This argument is not persuasive. “Eligibility and novelty are separate inquiries.” *Two-Way Media Ltd. v. Comcast Cable Commc’ns, LLC*, 874 F.3d 1329, 1340 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (citing *Affinity Labs of Tex., LLC v. DIRECTV, LLC*, 838 F.3d 1253, 1263 (Fed. Cir. 2016) for the holding that even assuming that a particular claimed feature was novel does not “avoid the problem of abstractness.”); *see also buySAFE, Inc. v. Google, Inc.*, 765 F.3d 1350, 1352 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (“[L]aws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas, no matter how ‘groundbreaking, innovative, or even brilliant’ . . . are outside what the statute means by ‘new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter.’”) (citing 35 U.S.C. § 101; *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 221–22; *Association for Molecular Pathology v. Myriad Genetics, Inc.*, 133 S.Ct. 2107, 2116–17 (2013)). Thus, the alleged novelty of Step C and Step D do not persuade us to discount or ignore *Smith*’s controlling eligibility analysis.

Additionally, during the oral hearing, Patent Owner asserted that it did not agree that “Step C” of the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea. *See* Tr. 14:18–16:14. Patent Owner appears to argue that Step C and

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Step D of the challenged claims do not recite an abstract idea. *See id.*

To the extent that this argument has been advanced, we reiterate our determination that these steps recite *rules* for playing a bonus wagering game. Step C recites the rule for how the dealer and players *form the bonus hand* in the wagering game (i.e., rules for playing a game). Similarly, Step D recites the rule for how the winning player is identified in the activity of playing a wagering game. The disclosure of the Specification comports with our finding. *See Ex. 1001, 3:33–39* (“Before game play begins, the house determines the *rules* with which the game will be played, including . . . the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.”) (emphasis added), 4:40–5:39.

Fourth, Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is distinguishable because it is an *ex parte* appeal decision, which is different from an issued patent where the patent examiner determined that the patent application recited allowable patent-eligible subject matter. PO Resp. 19–20; *see* Sur. 8. Patent Owner has not explained why this difference matters for the patent-eligibility inquiry that we must conduct here. *See id.* We decline to speculate on the basis for Patent Owner’s position. Rather, we observe that the § 101 inquiry is the same regardless of whether it is addressed in the context of examination, as in *Smith*, or in the context of a contested proceeding over an issued patent, as in the case here. Thus, we are not persuaded that *Smith* is distinguishable merely because our §101 inquiry arises in a CBM patent review of an issued patent.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

In sum, we determine that the challenged claims, each considered as a whole, recite and are directed to rules for playing a bonus wagering game. Rules for games have been considered to be a type of method of organizing human activity that are abstract ideas. *Guldenaar*, 911 F.3d at 1160–61. In addition, as discussed, a wagering game is a fundamental economic practice. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818. Accordingly, we conclude the challenged claims recite a fundamental economic practice and rules for playing games (i.e., interactions between people), which are certain methods of organizing human activity that are identified in the *Guidance* as abstract ideas. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52.

3. *Guidance Step 2A, Prong 2: Whether Challenged Claims Integrate the Abstract Idea into a Practical Application*

The Supreme Court has long distinguished between abstract ideas themselves (which are not patent eligible) and the integration of those abstract ideas into practical applications (which are patent eligible). *See, e.g., Alice*, 573 U.S. at 217 (explaining that “in applying the § 101 exception, we must distinguish between patents that claim the ‘buildin[g] block[s]’ of human ingenuity and those that integrate the building blocks into something more” (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 89), and stating that *Mayo* “set forth a framework for distinguishing patents that claim laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas from those that claim patent-eligible applications of those concepts”); *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 80, 84 (noting that the Court in *Diehr* found “the overall process patent eligible because of the way the additional steps of the process integrated the equation into the process as a whole,” but the Court in *Benson* “held that simply implementing a

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

mathematical principle on a physical machine, namely a computer, was not a patentable application of that principle”); *Bilski*, 561 U.S. at 611 (“*Diehr* explained that while an abstract idea, law of nature, or mathematical formula could not be patented, ‘an *application* of a law of nature or mathematical formula to a known structure or process may well be deserving of patent protection.’” (quoting *Diehr*, 450 U.S. at 187) (emphasis in original)); *Diehr*, 450 U.S. at 187, 192 n.14 (explaining that the process in *Flook* was ineligible not because it contained a mathematical formula, but because it did not provide an application of the formula). The Federal Circuit likewise has distinguished between claims that are “directed to” a judicial exception (which require further analysis to determine their eligibility) and those that are not (which are therefore patent eligible). *See, e.g.*, MPEP § 2106.06(b) (summarizing *Enfish, McRO, Inc. v. Bandai Namco Games Am. Inc.*, 837 F.3d 1299 (Fed. Cir. 2016), and other cases that found claims eligible as improvements to technology or computer functionality instead of abstract ideas).

In agreement with Supreme Court and Federal Circuit precedent, the *Guidance* provides that if a claim recites an abstract idea, it must be further analyzed to determine whether the recited judicial exception is integrated into a practical application. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. Specifically, under USPTO *Guidance* Step 2A, Prong 2, a claim reciting an abstract idea is not “directed to” the abstract idea if the “claim as a whole integrates the recited judicial exception into a practical application of that exception.” *Id.* Step 2A, Prong 2 is evaluated by “(a) [i]dentifying whether there are any additional elements recited in the claim beyond the judicial exception(s); and

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

(b) evaluating those additional elements individually and in combination to determine whether they integrate the exception into a practical application.” *Id.* at 54–55. “A claim that integrates a judicial exception into a practical application will apply, rely on, or use the judicial exception in a manner that imposes a meaningful limit on the judicial exception, such that the claim is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the judicial exception.” *Id.* at 53.

According to the *Guidance*, the following non-exhaustive exemplary considerations are indicative that an additional element or combination of elements may be integrated into a practical application:

- 1) An additional element reflects an improvement in the functioning of a computer, or an improvement to other technology or technical field;
- 2) An additional element that applies or uses a judicial exception to effect a particular treatment or prophylaxis for a disease or medical condition;
- 3) An additional element implements a judicial exception with, or uses a judicial exception in conjunction with, a particular machine or manufacture that is integral to the claim;
- 4) An additional element effects a transformation or reduction of a particular article to a different state or thing;
- 5) An additional element applies or uses the judicial exception in some other meaningful way beyond generally linking the use of the judicial exception to a particular technological environment, such that the claim as a whole is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the exception;

*Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 55. The *Guidance* “uses the term ‘additional elements’ to refer to claim features, limitations, and/or steps that are recited in the claim beyond the identified judicial exception.” *Id.* at 55 n.24.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

We determine that the challenged claims do not integrate the recited judicial exception (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people) into a practical application, as recognized by precedent. Claim 1 expressly recites a “method of a playing game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of “(a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager”; “(b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands”; “(c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands”; “(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank”; and “(e) paying said winning player a payout.”

Ex. 1001, 6:57–67. These steps, individually and in combination, recite rules for “playing a *wagering* game with at least one deck of cards.”

Further, as discussed above, dependent claims 2–12 also recite *rules* for gameplay, including from which cards the bonus hand is formed (claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9), the makeup of the plurality of hands (claims 3 and 6), and how the bonus wager/payout is paid (claims 10–12). Ex. 1001, 7:5–8:13. These elements, individually and in combination, add limitations to independent claim 1 that are also rules for playing a wagering game with a deck of cards. Thus, *all* of the limitations in claims 1–12 recite certain methods of organizing human activity (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people (following rules of playing a bonus wagering game)).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

More specifically, we observe that the challenged claims do not recite an additional element beyond the recited rules that (1) applies or uses a judicial exception to effect a particular treatment or prophylaxis for a disease or medical condition;

(2) implements a judicial exception with, or uses a judicial exception in conjunction with, a particular *machine* or *manufacture* that is integral to the claim; or (3) effects a transformation or reduction of a particular article to a different state or thing (e.g., deck of cards are not transformed). *See Ex. 1001, 6:57–8:13.*

In addition, none of the recited limitations of the challenged claims (considered individually or in combination) reflect an improvement to the functioning of a computer/technology/technical field. As discussed, claim 1 recites steps for playing a wagering game with a *deck of cards*, but does not recite an improvement to a computer or specific technology. *Ex. 1001, 6:57–67.* Likewise, dependent claims 2–12 do not recite an improvement to a computer or specific technology. *See Ex. 1001, 7:5–8:13.* We do note that the '987 patent teaches that

[t]he term “card” is used in the present application to indicate a playing card, a playing tile, or any facsimile thereof. For example, a card can be a paper playing card, a physical playing tile, an image of a card or tile on a video display, an image of a card or tile on a scratch ticket, etc. Any representation of a playing card or tile is contemplated. A “deck of cards” refers to one or more complete decks of playing cards or a set of pai gow tiles.

*Ex. 1001, 3:1–8.* In this way, a deck of cards may be a physical deck of cards or a facsimile such as a card on a video display. Nonetheless, we are not persuaded that the physicality of the cards indicates any improvement to

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

a technology or technical field. The card deck, as claimed, is a generic deck of cards, which operates only as a tool for playing the wagering game. As noted in *Smith*, the use of a *standard* deck of cards in a wagering game is not sufficient to confer patent-eligibility. *Smith*, 815 F.3d. at 819.

The challenged claims also do not recite an additional element that applies or uses the judicial exception in some other meaningful way beyond generally linking the use of the judicial exception to a particular technological environment, such that the claim as a whole is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the exception. As discussed, the limitations of the challenged claims, considered individually or in combination, all constitute the rules for playing a bonus wagering game. Thus, the claims do not, as a whole, integrate the recited judicial exception into a practical application of that exception.

In sum, the challenged claims recite a set of rules for playing a bonus wagering game, which may be considered both a fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people, and thereby an abstract idea under the *Guidance*. Further, for the foregoing reasons, we also find that the challenged claims do not integrate the abstract idea into a practical application under the *Guidance*. Thus, we conclude that the claims are directed to an abstract idea.

*4. Guidance, Step 2B: Whether Challenged Claims Contain an Inventive Concept*

Under the second step of the *Alice* inquiry, we must “scrutinize the claim elements more microscopically” for additional elements that might be understood to “transform the nature of the claim” into a patent-eligible application of an abstract idea. *Elec. Power Grp., LLC v. Alstom S.A.*, 830

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

F.3d 1350, 1353–54 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *RecogniCorp, LLC v. Nintendo Co.*, 855 F.3d 1322, 1327 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (“To save a patent at [*Alice*] step two, an inventive concept must be evident in the claims.”). That is, we determine whether the claims include an “inventive concept,” i.e., an element or combination of elements sufficient to ensure that the patent in practice amounts to significantly more than a patent on the abstract idea itself. *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 221. “Abstract ideas, including a set of rules for a game, may be patent-eligible if they contain an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819 (citing *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357). But appending purely conventional steps to an abstract idea does not supply a sufficiently inventive concept. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357–58.

Consistent with the foregoing, under the *Guidance*, if a claim has been determined to recite a judicial exception under the *Guidance*, Step 2A, we must evaluate the additional elements individually and in combination under the *Guidance*, Step 2B, to determine whether they provide an inventive concept (i.e., whether the additional elements amount to significantly more than the exception itself).<sup>7</sup> Per the *Guidance*, we must consider in Step 2B whether an additional element or combination of elements: (1) “[a]dds a specific limitation or combination of limitations that are not well-

---

<sup>7</sup> The patent eligibility inquiry may contain underlying issues of fact. *Mortg. Grader, Inc. v. First Choice Loan Servs. Inc.*, 811 F.3d 1314, 1325 (Fed. Cir. 2016). In particular, “[t]he question of whether a claim element or combination of elements is well-understood, routine and conventional to a skilled artisan in the relevant field is a question of fact.” *Berkheimer v. HP Inc.*, 881 F.3d 1360, 1368 (Fed. Cir. 2018).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

understood, routine, conventional activity in the field, which is indicative that an inventive concept may be present”; or (2) “simply appends well-understood, routine, conventional activities previously known to the industry, specified at a high level of generality, to the judicial exception, which is indicative that an inventive concept may not be present.”

*Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 56.

*a. Petitioner’s Contentions*

Petitioner contends that the ’987 patent teaches bonus wagers were well-known in the prior art and that there is nothing transformative about the underlying games on which the player wagers or the generic or standard cards with which the games are played. Pet. 27. Petitioner adds that the limitations of dependent claims 2–12 are likewise generic and non-inventive. Pet. 28 (“Forming the bonus hand from face-up cards (claims 2, 5, and 8); or from a combination of player and banker hands (claims 6 and 7) are merely additional conventional activities. The same is true for those dependent claims that specify how the payout is calculated and paid.”).

*b. Patent Owner’s Contentions*

Patent Owner presents several arguments, many of which we have addressed above. Patent Owner contends, for example, that Petitioner does not address the level of ordinary skill in the art, which Patent Owner contends is necessary to determine what would have been well-understood, routine and conventional to a skilled artisan. *See* PO Resp. 8 (“There is no evidence presented. Just vague attorney argument.”), 9 (“In order to determine if the claims are ‘well-understood, routine and conventional to a skilled artisan in the relevant field’ we need to determine who the ‘skilled artisan’ is. ‘[T]his is a question of fact’. *Berkheimer*. Bally presents no facts

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

nor any discussion of a skilled artisan.”), 10–11, 14–15. Patent Owner further argues that the challenged claims are significantly more than what existed at the time of the invention. *See* PO Resp. 16–18; *see* Sur. 5–6. Additionally, Patent Owner distinguishes *Smith* on the basis that this proceeding has evidence related to commercial success and what is well-understood, routine, and conventional by a skilled artisan. PO Resp. 18–20.

*c. Discussion*

Based on the complete record, we determine that Petitioner has provided sufficient evidence that the challenged claims recite well-understood, conventional, and routine activities. The '987 patent itself acknowledges that rules for bonus wagering and gameplay were well-known in the art. *See* Pet. 27–29. The '987 patent expressly states:

*There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand. Players do not control the hands, that is, no player hands are assigned to players. The dealer plays all of the hands according to rules that permit little or no discretion in how the hands are played. One such game for poker is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,839,731, Method and Apparatus for Playing a Casino Game. Another such game for blackjack is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/867,019, Method of Playing a Blackjack-type Casino Card Game. Another such game for pai gow is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/890,445, Method of Playing a Pai Gow-type Game*

Ex. 1001, 2:55–3:3 (emphasis added). Further, the '987 patent acknowledges that games with bonus wagering and bonus bets were also well-known in the art. The '987 patent teaches that

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*Many casino table games offer bonus bets or jackpots where players may wager on occurrences that do not affect the outcome of the basic game. These types of bonus bets and jackpots are popular with players. An example of such a bonus bet is the game “21+3” disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,012,719. The game is a standard blackjack game where the player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on whether or not a three-card poker hand made of the player’s first two cards and the dealer’s face up card is of a certain rank. Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player’s hand is compared to the banker’s hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player’s hand.*

Ex. 1001, 1:31–44 (emphasis added). In view of this disclosure, we determine that the ’987 patent expressly acknowledges that any allegedly inventive concepts involving (a) placing a bonus wager; (b) dealing out cards to each player; (c) forming the bonus hand; (d) identifying a winning player; and (e) paying the winning player, were merely well-understood, conventional, and routine steps for playing a card game.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> We note here that the Office has previously issued the Memorandum on Changes in Examination Procedure Pertaining to Subject Matter Eligibility, Recent Subject Matter Eligibility Decision (*Berkheimer v. HP, Inc.*) (Apr. 19, 2018) (“*Berkheimer Memo*”). In the *Berkheimer Memo*, the Office instructs that “[i]n a step 2B analysis, an additional element (or combination of elements) is not well-understood, routine or conventional unless the examiner finds, and expressly supports a rejection in writing with, one or more of the following:” (1) a “citation to an express statement in the specification or to a statement made by an applicant during prosecution that demonstrates the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s)”; (2) a “citation to one or more of the court decisions discussed in MPEP § 2106.05(d)(II) as noting the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s)”; (3) a “citation to a publication that demonstrates the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s)”; and (4) a “statement that the examiner

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Nonetheless, even if the foregoing statements in the '987 patent do not amount to such an admission, we further determine that the steps of “(c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands” and “(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank” cannot provide an inventive concept or add significantly more than the abstract idea itself to claim 1. *See* PO Resp. 19. According to Patent Owner, “[t]hese elements are significantly more than a skilled artisan would consider well-understood, routine, and conventional in 2004.” Sur. 5. Mr. Feola also testifies “[m]y invention has the ability to enhance[] games such as poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, and pai gow poker by allowing bonus bets based on combining dealer cards and player cards.” Ex. 2011 ¶ 3. We are unpersuaded by these contentions.

Even if we were to credit Mr. Feola’s testimony that his invention can enhance various casino games, each of the steps of claim 1, including Step C and Step D relied upon by Patent Owner to argue the claims add “significantly more” than just the abstract idea, are part of the rules of the wagering game using a generic deck of cards. *See* Ex. 1001, 6:60–7:4; 3:1–8. The wagering game claimed in *Smith*, reciting rules for a wagering game that use a *standard deck of cards*, was held to be an abstract idea. *Smith*, 815 F.3d 819.

---

is taking official notice of the well-understood, routine, conventional nature of the additional element(s).”) (emphasis added). The *Berkheimer* Memo is available at: <https://www.uspto.gov/sites/default/files/documents/memo-berkheimer-20180419.PDF>.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

Thus, Step C and Step D, as rules for gameplay, are themselves an integral part of the abstract idea. Any purported improvement or significance asserted by Patent Owner is, therefore, based only on the abstract ideas embodied by these claim steps (i.e., additional rules for allowing bonus wager in a wagering game). However, it is well-established that the abstract idea or the combination of abstract ideas (e.g., multiple rules) cannot supply the inventive concept for patent-eligibility. *See ChargePoint, Inc. v. SemaConnect, Inc.*, 920 F.3d 759, 774 (Fed. Cir. 2019) (citations omitted) (“[A] claimed invention’s use of the ineligible concept to which it is directed cannot supply the inventive concept that renders the invention ‘significantly more’ than that ineligible concept.”).

Patent Owner’s reliance on the Examiner’s reasons for allowance does not alter our determination. *See* Ex. 2008, 29. Patent Owner contends that the Examiner’s allowance of claims over the closest prior art during prosecution indicates that Step C and Step D of claim 1 were not well-understood, conventional, or routine in 2004. Sur. 5–6. In the Notice of Allowance, the Examiner stated that

Patentability has been found because the prior art fails to suggest or show the combination as set forth in the independent claim 1 including the formation of the bonus hand to be used for game play. This requirement is not seen or fairly suggested by the prior art of record.

The closest prior art of reference was Malcolm [U.S. Patent Pub. 2003/0122305 A1]. His teachings however fail to anticipate or render obvious applicant’s invention.

Ex. 2008, 29.

The foregoing statements in the Examiner’s reasons for allowance are directed to novelty and nonobviousness, not eligibility. But the fact that the

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

claims may be novel or nonobvious, thereby meeting the patentability requirements of § 102 and § 103, has no bearing on whether the challenged claims are patent-eligible under § 101. *Affinity Labs of Texas, LLC v. DirecTV, LLC*, 838 F.3d 1253, 1263 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (novelty “does not avoid the problem of abstractness”); *Genetic Techs. Ltd. v. Merial LLC*, 818 F.3d 1369, 1376 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“[A] claim directed to a newly discovered law of nature (or natural phenomenon or abstract idea) cannot rely on the novelty of that discovery for the inventive concept necessary for patent eligibility.”); *buySAFE, Inc. v. Google, Inc.*, 765 F.3d 1350, 1352 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (abstract ideas are unpatentable “no matter how ‘[g]roundbreaking, innovative, or even brilliant’” they may be). Further, Patent Owner’s reliance on the disclosure of the “Malcolm” reference (*see* PO Resp. 16–18) is inconsistent with the ’987 patent, which teaches that it was well-understood, routine, and conventional for standard games using standard card decks, such as blackjack, to include bonus wagering on bonus bets. *See* Ex. 1001, 1:31–44. In other words, including rules for playing a bonus wagering game with a deck of cards was a well-understood, routine, conventional practice in casino games. *See id.*

Further, we do not find that Petitioner’s alleged failure to address the level of ordinary skill in the art makes a substantive difference in this case. *See* PO Resp. 9. The Federal Circuit has held that “[t]he § 101 inquiry ‘may contain underlying factual issues.’” *Mortg. Grader, Inc. v. First Choice Loan Servs. Inc.*, 811 F.3d 1314, 1325 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (quoting *Accenture Glob. Servs., GmbH v. Guidewire Software, Inc.*, 728 F.3d 1336, 1341 (Fed. Cir. 2013)). The Federal Circuit also has explained that “not every § 101

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

determination contains genuine disputes over the underlying facts material to the § 101 inquiry.” *Berkheimer*, 881 F.3d at 1368. Here, Petitioner has affirmatively agreed that Patent Owner’s proposed level of ordinary skill is correct. *See* Tr. 5:17–18:1. While there may be other disputes between the parties, there is no factual dispute regarding the level of ordinary skill in the art. Thus, we do not find that *Berkheimer* mandates that the Petitioner must provide an expert declaration or other evidence to address an undisputed skill level in this § 101 inquiry. *See* PO Resp. 9.

Further, as discussed, even if we credit the testimony of Patent Owner’s expert (*see* Exs. 2007, 2011) in the absence of expert testimony from Petitioner, the fact remains that each of the steps of claim 1, including Step C and Step D, are part of the rules of the wagering game using a generic deck of cards. *See* Ex. 1001, 6:60–7:4, 3:1–8. “It has been clear since *Alice* that a claimed invention’s use of the ineligible concept to which it is directed cannot supply the inventive concept that renders the invention ‘significantly more’ than that ineligible concept.” *BSG Tech LLC v. Buyseasons, Inc.*, 899 F.3d 1281, 1290 (Fed. Cir. 2018). In short, a claim’s inventive concept cannot be the abstract idea itself.

Next, we are not persuaded that the claims recite “significantly more” based on the purported commercial success of Patent Owner’s game. As mentioned, “[c]ommercial success is not necessarily a proxy for an improvement in a technology nor does it necessarily indicate that claims were drawn to patent eligible subject matter.” *Versata Dev. Grp., Inc.*, 793 F.3d at 1335. The challenged claims explicitly recite features that are certain methods of organizing human activity (i.e., fundamental economic

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

practice and managing interactions between people (following rules)). Based on the complete record, Patent Owner has not explained why the license agreement, settlement, and purported success of casino games should change our reading of the express limitations in the challenged claims. *See* PO Resp. 18.

Additionally, for the reasons discussed previously, we determine that *Smith* is binding and controlling case law. The procedural posture (i.e., *ex parte* appeal), evidentiary record, and issue date of the decision (*see* Sur. 6–8) do not materially distinguish *Smith* from the instant proceeding. *See supra* Section II.H.2.c.

We further determine that the limitations of dependent claims 2–12 are additional rules for allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game, which are themselves abstract ideas that cannot supply an inventive concept. Dependent claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9 recite rules regarding how the bonus hand is formed. Dependent claims 3 and 6 recite rules regarding the plurality of hands. Dependent claims 10–12 recite rules regarding how the bonus wager/payout is paid. These limitations, viewed individually or in combination, are additional well-understood, routine, conventional activities for playing a card game (e.g., forming hands and paying winner). *See* Ex. 1001, 1:26–40. 2:52–67. Patent Owner does not address dependent claims 2–12 separately from claim 1. Thus, based on the complete record, we determine that the recited elements of claims 1–12 are nothing more than well-understood, routine, and conventional steps in playing a bonus wagering game.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

### III. CONCLUSION

Petitioner has met its burden of demonstrating by a preponderance of the evidence that claims 1–12 of the '987 patent are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101.

### IV. CONTINGENT MOTION TO AMEND

In its Motion to Amend, Patent Owner requests that we cancel claims 3–8 of the '987 patent and replace them with proposed, substitute claims 13–18. Mot. Amend 3–6. This Motion is contingent on our determination that claims 3–8 are unpatentable under § 101. *Id.* at 7.

In reviewing a motion to amend, we consider whether the motion meets the statutory and regulatory requirements set forth in 35 U.S.C. § 326(d) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.221. *See Lectrosonics, Inc. v. Zaxcom, Inc.*, Case IPR2018-01129 (PTAB Feb. 25, 2019) (Paper 15) (precedential). That is, the patent owner must demonstrate the following: (1) the amendment responds to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial; (2) the amendment does not seek to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent or introduce new subject matter; (3) the amendment proposes a reasonable number of substitute claims; and (4) the proposed claims are supported in the original disclosure of the patent. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 326(d); 37 C.F.R. § 42.221; *see also Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 4–8. The patent owner, however, “does not bear the burden of persuasion to demonstrate the patentability of [the proposed] substitute claims.” *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 4 (citing *Aqua Prods., Inc. v. Matal*, 872 F.3d 1290 (Fed. Cir. 2017); *Bosch Auto. Serv. Sols. LLC v. Iancu*, 878 F.3d 1027 (Fed. Cir. 2017)). “Rather, as a result of the current state of the law and [U.S. Patent and

CBM2018-00006  
 Patent 7,451,987 B1

Trademark Office] rules and guidance, the burden of persuasion will ordinarily lie with the petitioner to show that any proposed substitute claims are unpatentable by a preponderance of the evidence.” *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 4.

*A. Reasonable Number of Substitute Claims*

Initially, we determine that Patent Owner proposes a single substitute claim for each cancelled claim 3–8, and therefore meets this requirement. Mot. Amend 5–6. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 42.221(a)(3) (establishing a rebuttable presumption that one substitute claim is needed to replace each challenged claim). A table showing the proposed substitute claims and replaced original claims is as follows:

Original Claim	Substitute Claim
3	13
4	14
5	15
6	16
7	17
8	18

*B. Proposed Substitute Independent Claims 13 and 16*

In its Motion to Amend, Patent Owner requests that we cancel original claims 3 and 6, and replace these with proposed, substitute claims 13 and 16 respectively. Mot. Amend. 5. Claims 13 and 16 recite similar subject matter:

13. (Substitute for claim 3) The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands, and the method further comprises

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

the steps of providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.

16. (Substitute for claim 6) The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands and at least one banker hand, and the method further comprises the steps of providing a video screen on which said player hands and said at least one banker hand are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.

Mot. Amend 5.

Patent Owner asserts that proposed substitute claims 13 and 16 do not enlarge the scope of the originally issued claims 1–12, are supported by the specification, and are responsive to the grounds of unpatentability involved in the proceeding. *Id.* at 8–9. Given the similarity of the amendments, we discuss substitute claim 13 below as representative of the proposed amendments in both claims 13 and 16.

*1. New Matter*

In the Motion, Patent Owner asserts that these limitations are supported by the Specification of the '987 patent. Mot. Amend 8–9 (citing Ex. 1001, 6:3–41, Figs. 5–6). Patent Owner has not provided any citation to the original disclosure of U.S. Patent Application No. 11/776,613 (“the '613 Application”) from which the '987 patent issued. Nonetheless, we have included the '613 Application as Exhibit 3001 in this record.

Further, we observe that the cited sections of the '987 patent appear in the original disclosure of the '613 Application. The original disclosure includes Figures 5 and 6 below:

CBM2018-00006  
 Patent 7,451,987 B1

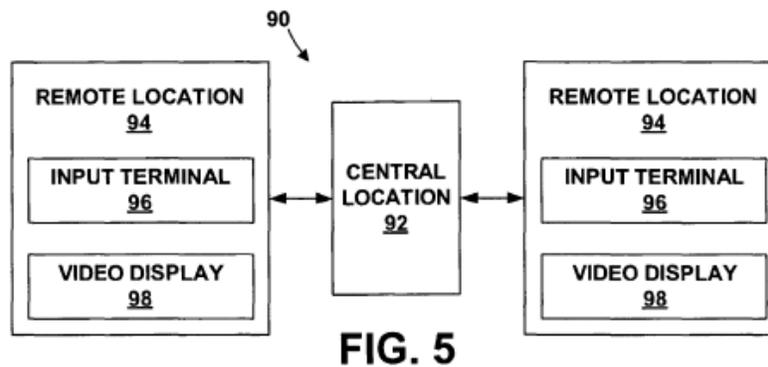


Figure 5 shows a block diagram of a keno-style system. Ex. 3001, 21.

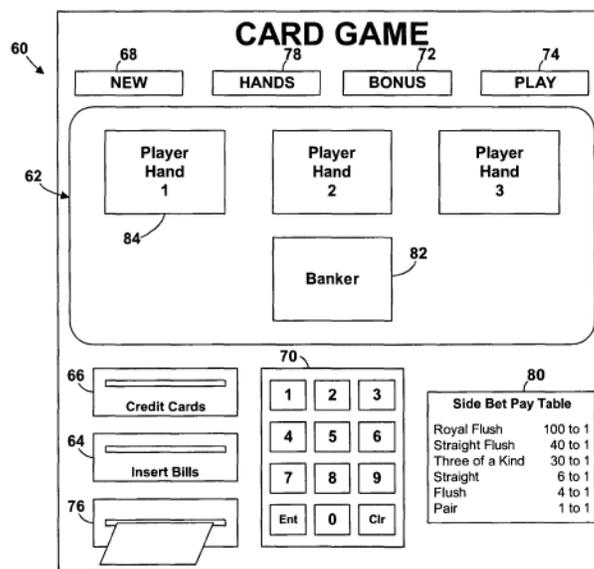


Fig. 6 shows a video screen implementing the game embodiment of Figure 1. *Id.* The '613 Application further teaches that

[w]ith individual machines, an example of which is shown in Fig. 6, implementing the embodiment of Fig. 1, each player has her own terminal 60. *An example is a video machine at a gaming establishment.* The banker hand 82 and player hands 84 are displayed on the player's video screen 62. *Prior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66.* The player presses the NEW button 68 and indicates the amount to wager for the game, typically by

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

entering an amount on the keypad 70. *The player begins a game by pressing the HANDS button 78 and entering the player hands on which the player wishes to wager using the keypad 70 or a touch screen 62. If the player wishes to play the bonus wager, she presses the BONUS button 72 and indicates the amount to wager.* The player presses the PLAY button 74 to deal the cards. If the player played the bonus wager, the rank of the bonus hand comprised of the face up cards of the player hands is compared to the table 80 of ranked hands for the bonus wager. If the bonus hand rank is in the table 80, the winning amount is credited to the player and may be printed on a voucher 76 for payment by a cashier or they may be paid in coins or other monetary tokens by the terminal itself. After the bonus wager is settled, the base game is completed and any winnings are paid out in the same fashion.

*Id.* ¶ 40 (emphasis added). Based on this disclosure, we determine that the amendments proposed in substitute claim 13 are supported by the '613 Application.

## 2. *Enlarging Claim Scope*

As stated in 35 U.S.C. § 316(d)(3), an “amendment . . . may not enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent.” *See also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.221(a)(2)(ii) (“A motion to amend may be denied where . . . [t]he amendment seeks to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent.”). “A substitute claim will meet the requirements of § 42.221(a)(2)(i) and (ii) if it narrows the scope of at least one claim of the patent, for example, the challenged claim it replaces, in a way that is responsive to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial.” *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. at 6–7.

We determine that this requirement has been satisfied because substitute claim 13 depends from original cancelled claim 1 and further narrows the scope of original cancelled claim 1 by reciting the “steps of

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.” *See* Mot. Amend 5.

*3. Responding to a Ground of Unpatentability*

37 C.F.R. § 42.221(a)(2)(i) states that “[a] motion to amend may be denied where . . . [t]he amendment does not respond to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial.”

In the Motion, Patent Owner does not provide a detailed explanation as to how the proposed amendments in substitute claim 13 respond to a ground of unpatentability. *See* Mot. Amend. 8. Patent Owner states:

The amendments add elements to claims 13 and 16 that are undisputedly physical in nature, eliminating any assertions that the claims are abstract matter.

Mot. Amend 9. Nevertheless, in Patent Owner’s Reply to Petitioner’s Opposition, Patent Owner provides responsive arguments that address § 101. Reply Amend 5–10.

In considering the motion, the entirety of the record is reviewed to determine whether a patent owner’s amendments respond to a ground of unpatentability involved in the trial. *Lectrosonics, Inc.*, slip op. 5–6. Based on the entirety of the record, including Patent Owner’s Reply, we determine that Patent Owner has sufficiently articulated its position for why the proposed amendment is responsive to the § 101 ground of unpatentability.

*4. § 101 Eligibility of Proposed Substitute Claims 13 and 16*

*a. Guidance, Step 1*

Under the *Guidance*, we first must determine “whether the claim is to a statutory category (Step 1).” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. Here, we

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

determine substitute claim 13 depends from original claim 1 and recites a statutory process, namely the process of playing a game with a deck of cards. *See* Mot. Amend 5.

*b. Guidance Step 2A, Prong 1: Whether Challenged Claims Recite an Abstract Idea*

As discussed above, under *Guidance* Step 2A, we determine whether the claims are directed to an abstract idea. Petitioner argues that the proposed amendment does not add anything or modify the abstract idea underlying the issued claims of the '987 patent. Opp. Amend 13.

Patent Owner responds that substitute claim 13 recites a “video screen” and a “wager input mechanism,” which are machines that do not fit into the three judicial exceptions listed in the *Guidance*. Reply Amend 6 (“[T]he claims do not cover a mathematical concept, nor certain methods of organizing human behavior, nor mental processes.”).

Based on the entirety of the record, we agree with Petitioner that substitute claim 13 continues to recite rules for playing a wagering game, which is the same abstract idea recited in original claim 1. This is because proposed substitute claim 13 depends from original claim 1 and necessarily includes all the limitations recited in claim 1. Thus, claim 13 expressly recites a “method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps (i.e., rules) of

- (a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
- (b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
- (c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and

(e) paying said winning player a payout.

Ex. 1001, 6:57–67. As discussed above with respect to original claim 1, these limitations recite a set of rules for playing a bonus wagering game, which is a method of organizing human activity that may be understood as both a fundamental economic practice and rules for playing games, and thus an abstract idea. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818; *Guldenaar*, 911 F.3d at 1160; *see also Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 52 (identifying managing personal behavior or relationships/interactions between people (including following rules) as a certain method of organizing human activity considered to be an abstract idea).

Further, the additional limitation “wherein said hands are player hands” recited in substitute claim 13 also appeared in original claim 3. This limitation, as discussed above, recites an additional rule for gameplay, specifically that the “plurality of hands” recited in original claim 1 are “player hands.” Mot. Amend 5. Thus, we consider this limitation to be another rule for playing a game that falls within certain methods of organizing human activity (i.e., fundamental economic practice and managing interactions between people (following rules)).

Having identified the abstract idea recited in substitute claim 13, we turn now to Step 2A, Prong 2 of *Guidance* to discuss in detail whether the additional limitations of a “video screen” and “wager input mechanism” integrate the judicial exception into a practical application.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*c. Guidance Step 2A, Prong 2: Whether Challenged Claims Integrate the Abstract Idea into a Practical Application*

Substitute claim 13 recites “the method further comprises the steps of providing a *video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed* and providing a *wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.*” Mot. Amend 5 (emphasis added).

Again, consistent with Supreme Court and Federal Circuit precedent, the *Guidance* provides that a claim reciting an abstract idea must be further analyzed to determine whether the recited judicial exception is integrated into a practical application of that exception. *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 53. “A claim that integrates a judicial exception into a practical application will apply, rely on, or use the judicial exception in a manner that imposes a meaningful limit on the judicial exception, such that the claim is more than a drafting effort designed to monopolize the judicial exception.” *Id.* at 53. However, “[m]erely includ[ing] instructions to implement an abstract idea on a computer” and “merely us[ing] a computer as a tool to perform an abstract idea” are not “practical applications” under Step 2A, Prong 2. *Id.* at 55.

Petitioner asserts that the substitute claims do not improve the functioning of a computer or an existing technological process because the substitute claims introduce generic physical components for a generic environment in which to carry out the abstract idea. Opp. Amend 14 (citing *TLI*, 823 F.3d at 611).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

In its Reply, Patent Owner asserts that “the creation of the bonus hand with cards from other hands, represents an improvement to a device, such as a video poker type machine, providing an improved gaming experience on the device.” Reply Amend 8. Patent Owner further contends that the “wager input mechanism” is a special purpose device closely tied to the game outlined in the claim elements. Reply Amend 7 (citing Ex. 1001, 6:3, 6:21–23, Fig. 6. According to Patent Owner, “only a small subset of computing machines have ‘wager input mechanisms.’” Reply Amend 8 (citing Ex. 2013).

In considering Patent Owner’s arguments, we find instructive our reviewing Court’s guidance in *Enfish*, 822 F.3d 1327. In *Enfish*, the Federal Circuit articulated that *Alice*, Step 1, inquires “whether the focus of the claims is on the specific asserted improvement in computer capabilities (i.e., the self-referential table for a computer database) or, instead, on a process that qualifies as an ‘abstract idea’ for which computers are invoked merely as a tool.” *Enfish*, 822 F.3d at 1335–36 (citing *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 217, 220–24). The Federal Circuit rejected a § 101 challenge because the claims “are directed to a specific improvement to the way computers operate, embodied in the self-referential table.” *Id.* at 1336. The Federal Circuit further commented that

we are not faced with a situation where general-purpose computer components are added post-hoc to a fundamental economic practice or mathematical equation. Rather, the claims are directed to a specific implementation of a solution to a problem in the software arts.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*Id.* at 1339; *see Elec. Power*, 830 F.3d at 1354 (characterizing the claims in *Enfish* as improving how computers carry out the “basic functions of storage and retrieval of data”).

Turning to substitute claim 13, we observe that the recited process is quite unlike the “self-referential table,” which was a “specific improvement to the way computers operate,” held to be not abstract in *Enfish*, 822 F.3d at 1336, and the “specific asserted improvement in computer animation, i.e., the automatic use of rules of a particular type” held to be not abstract in *McRO*, 837 F.3d at 1314. With regard to the “video screen,” substitute claim 13 only recites the step of “providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed.” Substitute claim 13 does not recite any additional limitation regarding the video screen that would, for example, indicate a specific improvement to the way video screens operate, i.e., how video screens display information.

The Specification also does not teach any improvement to video screens. For example, Figure 6 of the '987 patent shows a video machine with video screen 62 with player hands 84 and banker hand 82. *See* Ex. 1001, 2:46–47. In describing the video screen, the '987 patent generally states “[t]he banker hand 82 and player hands 84 are displayed on the player’s video screen 62.” Ex. 1001, 6:19–20. Similarly, the '987 patent teaches, with regard to Figure 5, that “[a]s the game is being played, the hands are displayed on a video screen 98 or matrix of video screens visible to the players at the remote location 94 from information received from the central location 92.” *Id.* at 6:12–15. The '987 patent further contemplates that the game may be played using video poker-type machines, personal

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

computers, hand-held devices, slot machines, over an on-line computer network.” *Id.* at 2:18–24. Throughout these passages, and the entire Specification, the ’987 patent does not teach that the “video screen” is anything beyond a general purpose/generic component that displays content. Indeed, the ’987 patent does not suggest that the video screen is improved from a technical perspective, or that it would operate differently than it otherwise could. *ChargePoint*, 920 F.3d at 768 (“Notably, however, the specification never suggests that the charging station itself is improved from a technical perspective, or that it would operate differently than it otherwise could.”).

Moreover, we note that Patent Owner does not dispute that the “video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed” is a general purpose component. In response to the question of whether a video screen is well-known in the gaming industry, Patent Owner’s counsel answered, “I’m not going to argue on the video screen. I want to stick to the wager input mechanism.” Tr. 25:11–14; *see id.* at 46:23–47:1.

Additionally, we find that substitute claim 13 also does not recite a “wager input mechanism” that is a special purpose device. *See Reply Amend 7*. Substitute claim 13 recites “providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.” Substitute claim 13 does not recite any additional limitation regarding the “wager input mechanism” other than that it allows the placement of the bonus wager.

Although the term “wager input mechanism” is not used in the Specification, the ’987 patent describes several possibilities for inputting wagers. Referring to Figure 5, the ’987 patent teaches that in keno-style

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

lottery system 90, a player makes her choice of player hands at remote location 94 by marking a slip of paper with the player hands she wishes to wager on, whether or not she wishes to play the bonus wager, and the wager amounts. Ex. 1001, 5:63–7:1. The player then “gives the slip to a clerk with the amount of the wager, who then *scans the slip into a terminal 96* that sends the choices to a central location 92.” *Id.* at 6:2–4 (emphasis added). The ’987 patent states that “[a]lternatively, *choices can be made from keys on a keyboard, keys on a key grid, or by boxes on a touch screen grid.*” *Id.* at 6:4–6 (emphasis added). Referring to Figure 6, the ’987 patent further teaches that each player has her own terminal 60 or video machine. *Id.* at 6:16–18. “Prior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a *money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66.*” *Id.* at 6:20–23 (emphasis added). With the video machine, the “player presses the NEW button 68 and indicates the amount to wager for the game, typically by *entering an amount on the keypad 70.*” *Id.* at 6:23–25 (emphasis added). Additionally, “[i]f the player wishes to play the bonus wager, she presses the *BONUS button 72 and indicates the amount to wager.*” *Id.* at 6:28–30 (emphasis added). In sum, the ’987 patent describes scanners, keyboards, keys on a key grid, boxes on a touch screen, as well as money readers and card readers as wager input mechanisms for placing a bonus wager.

Patent Owner argues that keypads and keyboards are not wager input mechanisms because the “choices” described in columns 5 and 6 of the ’987 patent are not the same as wager input because no money is involved. *See* Tr. 27:14–22. Patent Owner contends that the player

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

[g]ives the [keno] slip to a terminal, which can be read or alternatively the choices – the choices being which ones are the keno game are being chosen could be entered into the keyboard. That puts a context around that alternatively choices. It’s entering for a keno game which numbers you want to play on that card. That’s not the wager input. And the wager input mechanism has to be the card player and the insert of the bills.

*Id.* at 39:22–40:4.

We disagree with Patent Owner. The ’987 patent clearly describes the use of a keyboard or keypad as an alternative to scanning a slip of paper that contains the wager amount. Ex. 1001, 6:2–4. The ’987 patent states that the player “gives the slip to a clerk *with the amount of the wager*, who then scans the slip into a terminal 96 that sends the choices to a central location 92.” *Id.* (emphasis added). The ’987 patent further states that “[a]lternatively, *choices can be made from keys on a keyboard, keys on a key grid, or by boxes on a touch screen grid.*” *Id.* at 6:4–6 (emphasis added). The ’987 patent does not distinguish between the types of choices that may be made on the slip of paper versus through a keyboard or keypad. Additionally, the ’987 patent teaches that the player receives a receipt such as an indication on a private terminal, *indicating the hand or hands chosen for the game and if the bonus wager is played.* *Id.* at 6:8–12 (emphasis added). In other words, the receipt indicates the “choices” made by the player, including “if the bonus wager is played.” *See id.*

Further, we are not persuaded by Patent Owner that the ’987 patent distinguishes wager input from wager amount. *See* Tr. 43:21–44:13. Patent Owner takes the position that the insertion of cash into the money reader or card into the card reader is the *input* of wagers and the keys on the keypad 70 are used to enter the *wager amount.* *Id.* The ’987 patent does not provide

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

such a distinction between these terms. For example, the '987 patent teaches “[p]rior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66.” Ex. 1001, 6:20–23. The '987 patent does not refer to the money or card reader as receiving or inputting a wager. Instead, the term “wager” appears later when the player presses NEW button 68 or BONUS button 72 to indicate the amount to wager. *Id.* at 6:23–30.

Additionally, Patent Owner’s arguments at the oral hearing are contradicted by its position in its briefs. In Patent Owner’s briefs, it took the position that the paper slip scanner is a “wager input mechanism,” specifically “[t]he ‘wager input mechanism is found throughout the specification, for instance see the '987 patent in column 6, line 3 ‘. . . scans the slip into the terminal 96 . . . .’” Reply Amend 7. That disclosure teaches that the slip of paper contains “the amount of the wager.” Ex. 1001, 5:65–6:4 (“[A] player typically makes her choice of player hands at a remote location 94 by *marking a slip of paper with the player hands she wishes to wager on, whether or not she wishes to play the bonus wager, and the wager amounts. She gives the slip to a clerk with the amount of the wager, who then scans the slip into a terminal 96 that sends the choices to a central location 92.*”) (emphasis added). In short, Patent Owner relies on the scanning of slips containing *wager amounts* as an example of a “wager input mechanism,” even though, arguably, no cash, credit card, or money has been inserted into the scanner. Thus, based on the complete record, we determine that the term “wager input mechanism” includes general purpose computer

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

components, such as a keyboard or keypad, which are generic computer tools for the input of the bonus wager.

Generic components such as the video screen and keyboard or keypad (i.e., wager input mechanism) do not integrate the judicial exception of substitute claim 13 in a practical application. As our reviewing court has observed, “after *Alice*, there can remain no doubt: recitation of generic computer limitations does not make an otherwise ineligible claim patent-eligible.” *DDR*, 773 F.3d at 1256 (citing *Alice*, 573 U.S. at 223).

Moreover, even assuming the recited “wager input mechanism” may be limited to money/card readers, we are not persuaded the addition of a money/card reader integrates the abstract idea into a practical application. *See* Reply Amend 8–9. Patent Owner does not dispute that card/money readers are generic or general purpose computer components. *See generally* Reply Amend 8; *see* Tr. 26:13–20. Patent Owner contends, instead, that a general purpose computer did not have card/money readers. Tr. 26:7–12; Reply Amend 8 (“Only a small subset of computer machines have ‘wager input mechanisms.’”). However, substitute claim 13, a method claim, does not require the “wager input mechanism” to be part of a computer, processor, other computer component, or video gaming machine. Substitute claim 13 recites the step of “providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed,” which broadly covers providing a standalone generic card/money reader that is not necessarily part of a general purpose computer.

For the foregoing reasons, based on the complete record, we determine that additional elements (“video screen” and “wager input

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

mechanism”) of substitute claim 13, individually or in combination, are generic computer elements and are invoked merely as a tool for carrying out the rules of bonus wagering game. This is not sufficient to integrate the judicial exception into a practical application. *See Credit Acceptance Corp. v. Westlake Svcs.*, 859 F.3d 1044, 1055 (Fed. Cir. 2017) (The Federal Circuit finding abstract the claims for using a computer as a tool to process an application for financing a purchase).

Thus, based on our consideration of *Guidance*, Step 2A (Prongs 1 and 2), we determine that substitute claim 13 is directed to an abstract idea.

*d. Guidance, Step 2B: Whether Challenged Claims Contain an Inventive Concept*

Patent Owner argues that substitute claim 13 is significantly more than what was well-understood, routine, and conventional to a skilled artisan at the time of the invention based on arguments made in its Patent Owner’s Response to the Petition and in the Sur-Reply. Reply Amend 10. Setting aside whether Patent Owner may properly incorporate by reference arguments from its other briefs in this manner, we are not persuaded by Patent Owner’s arguments for the reasons discussed previously. *See supra* Section II.H.

Further, we reiterate that “[a]bstract ideas, including a set of rules for a game, may be patent-eligible if they contain an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819 (citing *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357). But appending purely conventional steps to an abstract idea does not supply a sufficiently inventive concept. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357–58. And, per the *Guidance*, we consider whether an additional element or combination of

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

elements: (1) “[a]dds a specific limitation or combination of limitations that are not well-understood, routine, conventional activity in the field, which is indicative that an inventive concept may be present;” or (2) “simply appends well-understood, routine, conventional activities previously known to the industry, specified at a high level of generality, to the judicial exception, which is indicative that an inventive concept may not be present.”

*Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. at 56.

Substitute claim 13 appends purely conventional steps of “providing a video screen on which said plurality of player hands are displayed and providing a wager input mechanism through which said bonus wager is placed.” Mot. Amend 5. Patent Owner concedes that displaying player hands on a video screen was well-known in the gaming industry at the time of the invention. Tr. 25:11–14, 42:23–47:1. Further, Patent Owner agreed at the oral hearing that every video poker machine in 2004 had a way to input money whether through credit card or cash. *Id.* at 45:18–46:1. As such, the dispute between the parties is focused on whether it was well-known, conventional, or routine for a video gambling machine to include a *card/money reader* as a particular type of “wager input mechanism.” *See id.* at 46:2–7. Patent Owner’s argument is based on a narrow reading of “wager input mechanism” that does not comport with the Specification, as discussed in detail above. “Wager input mechanism” includes keyboards, keypads, and touch screens in addition to card/money readers. There is no genuine dispute on this issue and we find that, these are conventional, well-known, and routine computer components that do not add significantly more to the claimed elements. *See Voter Verified, Inc. v. Election Sys. & Software LLC*,

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

887 F.3d 1376, 1386 (Fed. Cir. 2018) (noting that a keyboard is a standard computer component, which is “not sufficient to transform abstract claims into patent-eligible subject matter”). Moreover, substitute claim 13 is a method claim that does not recite a video gaming machine with a wager input mechanism. Mot. Amend 5. The substitute claim requires the step of providing a “wager input mechanism,” which is satisfied by providing a card/money reader that is not necessarily part of a video gaming machine or any other computer.

Accordingly, we determine that the additional limitations of substitute claim 13, viewed individually or in combination, recite well-understood, routine, conventional steps and components for playing a wagering game. The same applies to substitute claim 16, which is nearly identical to substitute claim 13 except that the video screen displays player hands and at least one banker hand. Mot. Amend 5.

*C. Proposed Substitute Claims 14, 15, 17, and 18*

Patent Owner asserts that proposed substitute claims 14, 15, 17, and 18 do not enlarge the scope of the originally issued claims 1–12, are supported by the specification, and are responsive to the grounds of unpatentability involved in the proceeding. Mot. Amend. 8–9. Based on the entirety of the record, we agree that Patent Owner has satisfied the procedural requirements under 35 U.S.C. § 326(d) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.221.

With regard to § 101 eligibility of proposed substitute claims 14, 15, 17, and 18, Patent Owner does not make additional arguments separate from those discussed above for substitute claims 13 and 16. Mot. Amend 6–9; Reply Amend 5–10. Further, the only proposed amendments amend original

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

claims 4 and 5 to depend from substitute claim 13, and original claims 7 and 8 to depend from claims 17 and 18. Mot. Amend 5. Therefore, we determine that the recited elements of substitute claims 14, 15, 17, and 18 are unpatentable by a preponderance of the evidence, under § 101, for the same reasons discussed for substitute claims 13 and 16.

#### V. CONCLUSION

Accordingly, Petitioner has met its burden of demonstrating that the '987 patent is a covered business method patent eligible for review. Petitioner has also met its burden of demonstrating by a preponderance of the evidence that claims 1–12 of the '987 patent are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Further, based on the entirety of the record, we determine that proposed substitute claims 13–18 are unpatentable by a preponderance of the evidence based on 35 U.S.C. § 101.

This is a Final Written Decision of the Board under 35 U.S.C. § 328(a). Parties to the proceeding seeking judicial review of this decision must comply with the notice and service requirements of 37 C.F.R. § 90.2.

#### VI. ORDER

For the reasons given, it is:

ORDERED that claims 1–12 of the '987 patent are unpatentable; and  
FURTHER ORDERED that Patent Owner's Motion to Amend is  
denied.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

For PETITIONER:

Gene Lee  
PERKINS COIE LLP  
lee-ptab@perkinscoie.com

For PATENT OWNER:

Richard Baker  
NEW ENGLAND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY, LLC  
rbaker@newenglandip.com

Steven Martin  
ALTMAN & MARTIN  
smartin@altmartlaw.com

[Trials@uspto.gov](mailto:Trials@uspto.gov)  
571-272-7822

Paper 49  
Entered: November 20, 2019

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

---

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

---

BALLY GAMING, INC., DBA BALLY TECHNOLOGIES,  
Petitioner,

v.

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.  
Patent Owner.

---

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

---

Before FRANCES L. IPPOLITO, KEVIN W. CHERRY, and  
CHRISTOPHER G. PAULRAJ, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

IPPOLITO, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

DECISION

*Denying Request on Rehearing of Final Written Decision Determining that  
Challenged Claims are Unpatentable  
37 C.F.R. § 42.71(d)*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

## I. INTRODUCTION

Patent Owner filed a Request for Rehearing (Paper 48, “Reh’g Req.” or “Rehearing Request”) asserting that in the Final Written Decision (Paper 47, “FWD”), the Board “misapprehended or overlooked key portions of the Record.” Reh’g Req. 1. In that Final Written Decision, we determined that claims 1–12 (“instituted claims”) of U.S. Patent No. 7,451,987 B1 (Ex. 1001, “the ’987 patent”) are unpatentable. FWD 3, 66.

Under 37 C.F.R. § 42.71(d), “[t]he burden of showing a decision should be modified lies with the party challenging the decision. The request must specifically identify all matters the party believes the Board misapprehended or overlooked, and the place where each matter was previously addressed in a motion, opposition, or a reply.”

For the reasons provided below, we deny Patent Owner’s Request for Rehearing.

## II. ANALYSIS

### A. *Forum Selection Clause*

Patent Owner contends that it is “clear error” for the Board to refuse to enforce the Forum Selection Clause between the parties because the Board’s decision “overlooks key aspects of the Record.” Reh’g Req. 5. Patent Owner asserts that the FWD and the Decision on Institution (Paper 19) never states that the Forum Selection Clause is invalid or does not apply, and that the “sole assertion in the Decision is that the Patent Owner did not enjoin the USPTO to follow the law.” *Id.* at 6. Patent Owner further contends that the text of the Settlement Agreement (Exhibit 2005) is exclusive and requires that only the Nevada courts can resolve the dispute. *Id.* (citing Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response (Paper 6, “Prelim. Resp.”))

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

and Patent Owner's Sur-Reply to the Preliminary Response (Paper 18, "Prelim. Resp. Sur.")). Additionally, Patent Owner argues that the FWD failed to consider the Supreme Court's decision in *M/S Bremen v. Zapata Off-Shore Co.*, 407 U.S. 1 (1972) and a district court's decision in *Callaway Golf Co. v. Acushnet Co.*, 523 F. Supp. 2d 388 (D. Del. 2007). Patent Owner also asserts that the Board should have interpreted the Settlement Agreement and, further, "the USPTO should have required that Bally seek permission from the Nevada District Court to proceed in the PTAB against the plain language of the Settlement Agreement, or denied institution outright. Such permission was never sought, and the institution should never have occurred." Reh'g Req. 8.

To start, we do not agree with Patent Owner that the rehearing request on this particular issue is timely. Patent Owner has argued that "the institution should never have occurred" and that institution should have been denied outright. *Id.* However, our Decision on Institution (Paper 19, "Dec.") was entered on June 22, 2018. Any request for rehearing of our determinations regarding the forum selection clause in that Decision should have been filed 14 days from the entry of that decision. 37 C.F.R. § 42.71(d)(1). As we noted in the FWD, after institution of the covered business method patent review ("CBM review"), the parties did not present any additional evidence or arguments regarding the forum selection clause issue. FWD 8 ("In the post-institution briefing, neither party has added arguments or evidence to the record regarding this issue."). Indeed, the Patent Owner's Response (Paper 28, "PO Resp.") and Sur-Reply (Paper 39, "Sur.") and Petitioner's Reply (Paper 31, "Reply") did not discuss forum selection. For completeness and clarity of the record, we reiterated our

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

determination in the Decision on Institution that

[b]ased on the preliminary record, we observed that Patent Owner had not identified any controlling authority—such as by statute, rule, or binding precedent—that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. Dec. 8–11. For example, section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we noted that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). *Id.* We did not agree with Patent Owner that any portion of chapter 32, § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, explicitly provides for a contractual estoppel defense. *See id. In the post-institution briefing, neither party has added arguments or evidence to the record regarding this issue.*

FWD 7–8 (emphasis added). Thus, Patent Owner’s quarrel now is one with the past determinations made in the Decision on Institution for which the deadline for rehearing has long expired. Nonetheless, in the interest of maintaining a complete record, we address Patent Owner’s arguments below.

First, Patent Owner mischaracterizes the FWD as relying on the “sole assertion . . . that the Patent Owner did not enjoin the USPTO to follow the law.” Reh’g Req. 6. The FWD (and the Decision on Institution) provided several reasons for our determination, including, as quoted above, that Patent Owner had not identified any controlling authority that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. FWD 7–8. Further, we determined that “[t]he Board is neither bound by the party’s Agreement, nor do we have independent

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

jurisdiction to resolve any contractual dispute between the parties over the forum selection clause in that Agreement.” *Id.* We additionally addressed *Dodocase VR, Inc. v MerchSource, LLC*, No. 17-cv-07088-EDL, 2018 WL 1475289 (N.D. Cal. Mar. 26, 2018), which the Federal Circuit affirmed in *Dodocase VR, Inc. v. MerchSource, LLC*, 767 F. App’x 930, 935–36 (Fed. Cir. 2019) (non-precedential) (collectively referred to as “*Dodocase*”), on the basis that “unlike the facts and procedural posture of that case, we do not have before us any court order requiring the Petition in this proceeding to be withdrawn.” *Id.* at 8. Thus, we are not persuaded that we overlooked any evidence or argument in the record on this basis.

Second, given the particular circumstances before us, we do not agree with Patent Owner that we are or were required to: (1) interpret the Settlement Agreement (Exhibit 2005); (2) determine the forum selection clause is exclusive and requires that only the Nevada courts can resolve the dispute; (3) order Petitioner to seek permission from the Nevada District Court to proceed in the PTAB against the plain language of the Settlement Agreement;” or (4) deny institution. Reh’g Req. 6–8. This is because, even assuming as Patent Owner argues (*id.* at 6), that we interpret the *exclusive* forum selection clause as being “far broader and more definitive than the forum selection clause in the *Dodocase*,” the fact remains that the decision in the *Dodocase* is inapposite for the reasons we have explained in our FWD. That is, there, the district court ordered the parties to withdraw the petition filed with the Board. Ex. 1027, 24. Those facts are very different from the ones before us in the instant proceeding where no decision by a federal district court required the parties to withdraw the petition. Even Patent Owner acknowledges that “[c]urrent case law permits District Courts

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

*to enforce venue selection clauses* against the PTAB through injunction, making it unlikely that the PTAB will have the opportunity to find any claims in the ‘987 patent unpatentable.” Prelim. Resp. Sur. 5 (emphasis added). In this way, Patent Owner agrees that *Dodocase* stands for the proposition that the *district court*, not the Board, may issue an injunction requiring the parties to withdraw the petition. Yet, no district court injunction was at issue here.

More importantly, Patent Owner, again, has not identified any *controlling* authority that requires the Board to deny institution of a CBM review based on contractual estoppel. The FWD explains that

section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we noted that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§ 322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§ 324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§ 326). *Id.* We did not agree with Patent Owner that any portion of chapter 32, § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, explicitly provides for a contractual estoppel defense. *See id.*

FWD 7–8. None of these statutory provisions expressly grant us the authority to enforce contractual obligations between the parties such as by ordering Petitioner to comply with the forum selection clause (e.g., ordering Petitioner to seek permission from the Nevada district court to file a petition), or awarding damages to either party for breach of contract disputes. Thus, the parties are not at liberty to seek from us, nor do we have the capacity to grant, relief that is outside the contours of the statutory authority given by Congress for CBM review. *See Killip v. Office of Personnel Mgmt.*, 991 F.2d 1564, 1569 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (“An agency is but a

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

creature of statute. Any and all authority pursuant to which an agency may act ultimately must be grounded in an express grant from Congress.”).

Additionally, Patent Owner’s reliance on the decisions in *Bremen* and *Callaway* is misplaced. In *Bremen*, the Supreme Court rejected the district court’s ruling that a forum selection clause was unenforceable as a matter of public policy, determined that the lower court had given “far too little weight and effect” to the forum selection clause, upheld the clause, and designated “the London Court of Justice” as the site for all disputes. *Bremen*, 407 U.S. at 1912. In doing so, the Supreme Court observed that “[t]he threshold question is whether that court should have exercised its jurisdiction to do more than give effect to the legitimate expectations of the parties, manifested in their freely negotiated agreement, *by specifically enforcing the forum clause.*” *Id.* at 1914 (emphasis added). However, as discussed, our CBM review does not seek to resolve contractual disputes or enforce contractual obligations, and is, instead, focused on reviewing the patentability of the challenged claims. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 328(a) (“FINAL WRITTEN DECISION.—If an inter partes review is instituted and not dismissed under this chapter, *the Patent Trial and Appeal Board shall issue a final written decision with respect to the patentability of any patent claim challenged by the petitioner and any new claim added under section 326(d)*”) (emphasis added); *see also* 35 U.S.C. § 324 (a) (“THRESHOLD.—The Director may not authorize a post-grant review to be instituted unless the Director determines that the information presented in the petition filed under section 321, if such information is not rebutted, would demonstrate that it is more likely than not that at least 1 of the claims challenged in the petition is unpatentable.”). Thus, we are not persuaded that the *Bremen*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

decision's discussion of the district court's review and enforcement of contractual obligations applies in a CBM review where Patent Owner has not shown that the panel has comparable authority to resolve contract disputes.

Next, although, *Callaway* is a non-binding district court decision, we nevertheless observe that the circumstances in *Callaway* support our determination. In *Callaway*, the district court reviewed and decided a breach of contract dispute between the parties. The district court determined Acushnet had breached the contract by seeking an *inter partes* reexamination:

[t]he Agreement expressly provides that “[a]ny dispute arising out of or relating to patents” be resolved by the procedures set forth therein, which are “the sole and exclusive procedure[s] for the resolution of any such dispute.” (D.I. 199, ex. 1 at § 19.1) These procedures included mediation and litigation in this district;[] reexamination proceedings are not listed as a possible alternative and, therefore, are precluded as possible remedies to any disputes involving the Sullivan patents.[] (*Id.* at §§ 19.5–19.7) There is no need for the court to determine whether an *inter partes* reexamination is a “legal proceeding,” insofar as defendant breached the Agreement in any event: *If it is a legal proceeding, defendant breached by filing a legal proceeding in the wrong forum; if it is not, defendant breached because the Agreement only allows for legal proceedings.*

*Callaway*, 523 F. Supp. 2d at 405–06 (emphasis added, footnotes omitted); *see id.* at 407 (“[B]ased upon the foregoing discussion, *defendant violated the Agreement* by filing the *inter partes* reexaminations to contest the validity of the Sullivan patents.”) (emphasis added). The district court granted *Callaway*'s motion for summary judgment of breach of contract. *Id.* at 407. Again, for a CBM review, the Board does not have the authority to enforce a contract (e.g., ordering a party to perform obligations) or to resolve

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

breach of contract disputes (e.g., determining a breach has occurred). Thus, to the extent that Patent Owner seeks this relief, it must obtain that relief from the district court.<sup>1</sup>

Finally, we are not persuaded that the Petition should have been denied “outright” as Patent Owner proposes. Reh’g Req. 8. Again, Patent Owner has not identified any authority that provides a contractual estoppel defense in a CBM review. Moreover, Congress has demonstrated that it will provide expressly for equitable defenses if desired and has provided for estoppel based on a party’s previous challenge to the same patent. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 325(e). But Congress did not provide for contractual estoppel as a defense to unpatentability in an AIA proceeding.

*B. Covered Business Method Patent Review Standing*

Patent Owner asserts that our FWD ignores a precedential decision in *Global Tel\*Link Corp. v. Securus Technologies, Inc.*, Case CBM2014-00166, Paper 17 at 7 (PTAB Feb. 6, 2015). Reh’g Req. 9–10 (“The Decision ignores the *Global Tel\*Link* precedent, cited in the Patent Owners Preliminary Response Sur-Reply at p. 12, and arbitrarily and capriciously finds a charge of infringement upon which they instituted this CBM.”).

Initially, we observe that though the decision in *Global Tel\*Link* may be instructive, contrary to Patent Owner’s assertion, that decision has not been designated precedential. Moreover, taking into consideration the discussion by the panel in *Global Tel\*Link*, we are not persuaded that our determination misapprehended or overlooked any arguments or evidence in

---

<sup>1</sup>By granting institution and proceeding to the FWD, we have not made any determination on whether Petitioner’s actions breach the parties’ Settlement Agreement.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

the record. For example, the panel there determined that the “Petitioner ha[d] not demonstrated sufficiently that it satisfies the standing requirements to file its Petition under 37 C.F.R. § 42.304(a) and, therefore, *den[ied]* institution of a covered business method patent review.” *Global Tel\*Link Corp.*, Paper 17 at 2. In contrast, we discussed at length in the FWD how Petitioner provided sufficient evidence for standing in this proceeding. Specifically, we applied *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, 549 U.S. 118 (2007) and determined the particular factual circumstances of the parties’ past relationship regarding allegations of infringement, the Settlement Agreement (Ex. 2006), and the parties’ current dispute of the same Agreement in district court (events that had all taken place by the time of the CBM filing) to be sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish Petitioner’s CBM patent review standing under relevant case law. FWD 8–11; Dec. 13–19. Thus, we do not agree that our FWD “arbitrarily and capriciously” found a charge of infringement.

*C. Abstract Idea*

Patent Owner further argues that the FWD misapplies *Alice* to the facts. Patent Owner asserts first that the FWD’s articulation of the abstract idea is contrary to the parties’ agreement in the record and in the Institution Decision. Specifically, Patent Owner contends that it did not have an opportunity to defend against the Board’s change of the abstract idea from “allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game” to “rules for playing a bonus wagering game.” Reh’g Req. 10–11.

To Patent Owner’s point, the FWD phrased the same abstract idea slightly differently by including “rules for playing” the bonus wager game in

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

the abstract idea. Nonetheless, we are not persuaded that this is clear error or deprived Patent Owner of the opportunity to defend its position. Indeed, Patent Owner does not explain *why* the “rules for playing a bonus wagering game” is substantively different from “allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game,” or, more importantly, the basis for Patent Owner’s contention that this is a “fundamental change.” *See* Reh’g Req. 11.

Indeed, there can be no doubt that from the very start of this proceeding, the issue at the heart of the patent eligibility dispute between the parties is whether the challenged claims recite significantly more than the rules for playing a bonus wagering game (i.e., allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game). For example, in the Decision on Institution, we explained that challenged claim 1 is expressly directed to a “method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of placing a bonus wager (step (a)), forming a bonus hand (step (c)), identifying a winner of the bonus wager (step (d)), and paying the winner (step (e)). Ex. 1001, claim 1. Dec. 27. Further, we noted that the specification describes the mechanics of gameplay by providing

the rules with which the game will be played, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands, the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

Dec. 28 (quoting Ex. 1001, 3:33–39). Thus, we have said from the start and to the end that the challenged claims at issue involve *rules* for gameplay. *Id.*; FWD 23–26.

Further, in our analysis in both the Decision on Institution and FWD, we provided detailed discussions regarding the parties’ respective

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

contentions related to *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816, 817–18 (Fed. Cir. 2016).  
Dec. 28–30; FWD 23–26. We noted that in *Smith*, the Federal Circuit  
determined that

Applicants’ claims, directed to rules for conducting a wagering  
game, compare to other “fundamental economic practice[s]”  
found abstract by the Supreme Court. *See id.* As the Board  
reasoned here, “[a] wagering game is, effectively, a method of  
exchanging and resolving financial obligations based on  
probabilities created during the distribution of the cards.” J.A.  
15. In *Alice*, the Supreme Court held that a method of  
exchanging financial obligations was drawn to an abstract idea.  
134 S. Ct. at 2356–57. Likewise, in *Bilski*, the Court  
determined that a claim to a method of hedging risk was  
directed to an abstract idea. 561 U.S. at 611 . . . . Here,  
*Applicants’ claimed “method of conducting a wagering game”*  
*is drawn to an abstract idea* much like *Alice’s* method of  
exchanging financial obligations and *Bilski’s* method of  
hedging risk.

Dec. 29–30 (emphasis added) (citing *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818–19); *see* FWD  
24–26 (discussing the same portions of *Smith*). We determined also that the  
challenged claims in this proceeding were analogous to those at issue in  
*Smith*, which recited “rules for conducting a wagering game.” FWD 26.  
Moreover, we observe that even in *Smith*, the Federal Circuit agreed that the  
“method of conducting a wagering game” implicates the same abstract idea  
as “rules for conducting a wagering game.” *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 818–19.

Given the complete record, Patent Owner has not explained  
persuasively why the challenged claims are not directed to “rules for playing  
a bonus wagering game” or “allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game.”  
In fact, the discussion provided in the FWD would be the same under either  
articulation of the same abstract idea. Thus, we do not agree that our FWD  
changed theories in midstream or otherwise deprived Patent Owner of an

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

opportunity to defend itself. *See* Reh’g Req. 11.

*D. Federal Circuit Decisions*

Patent Owner further argues that it did not have an opportunity to address the Federal Circuit decisions in *BSG Tech LLC v. BuySeasons, Inc.*, 899 F.3d 1281 (Fed. Cir. 2018) and *ChargePoint, Inc. v. SemaConnect, Inc.*, 920 F.3d 759 (Fed. Cir. 2019) that were cited in the FWD. Reh’g Req. 12. Yet, Patent Owner has not argued that it was not aware of these precedential Federal Circuit decisions, and acknowledges that “*BSG* is just another case referred to in the Revised Guidance as one of numerous decisions [issued by the Federal Circuit] identifying subject matter as abstract or non-abstract in the context of specific cases, and that number is continuously growing.” *Id.*

Further, Patent Owner has not explained persuasively why our FWD may not cite to applicable precedential decisions issued by our reviewing court. *See* Reh’g Req. 14 (“Reliance on *ChargePoint* and *BSG* is clear error and contrary to USPTO policy (and thus a violation of the APA).”). Thus, we are not persuaded of error on this basis.). The *2019 Revised Patent Subject Matter Eligibility Guidance* (“Guidance”) does not require us to depart from the 101 analysis provided by precedent. Rather, the “USPTO . . . aims to clarify the analysis [i]n accordance with judicial precedent and in an effort to improve consistency and predictability[.]” *Guidance*, 84 Fed. Reg. 50, 52 (Jan. 7, 2019).

For rehearing, Patent Owner argues for the first time that the Federal Circuit’s decision in *Cellspin Soft, Inc. v. Fitbit, Inc.*, 927 F.3d 1306 (Fed. Cir. 2019) provides an opposing interpretation of the *BSG* decision. The *Cellspin* decision was issued on June 25, 2019, after our FWD was entered on June 19, 2019. As such, we could not have misapprehended or

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

overlooked case law that had not been issued by the Federal Circuit, or submitted and argued by the parties in this proceeding.

Even considering *Cellspin*, we are not persuaded of any error in the FWD. *Cellspin* quotes *BSG* for the proposition that “[i]f a claim’s only ‘inventive concept’ is the application of an abstract idea using conventional and well-understood techniques, the claim has not been transformed into a patent-eligible application of an abstract idea.” *Cellspin*, 927 F.3d at 1316 (quoting *BSG*, 899 F.3d at 1290–91). In the FWD, we explained that the challenged claims used conventional and well-understood techniques, i.e., rules for playing a game. FWD 40–46 (citing Ex. 1001, 1:31–44, 2:55–3:3). In view of this disclosure, we determine that the ’987 patent expressly acknowledges that any allegedly inventive concepts involving (a) placing a bonus wager; (b) dealing out cards to each player; (c) forming the bonus hand; (d) identifying a winning player; and (e) paying the winning player were merely well-understood, routine, and conventional steps for playing a card game.

Thus, for the reasons above, we are not persuaded that we have misapprehended or overlooked evidence based on these arguments.

Additionally, Patent Owner contends that we ignored Patent Owner’s argument that *Smith* is not on point and is irrelevant in the *Alice*, Step 2B analysis. Reh’g Req. 16–17. We disagree with Patent Owner’s reading of the FWD. We considered Patent Owner’s many arguments regarding *Smith* on pages 28–31 of the FWD. For example, on page 31 of the FWD, we determined that

Patent Owner argues that *Smith* is distinguishable because it is an *ex parte* appeal decision, which is different from an issued patent where the patent examiner determined that the patent

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

application recited allowable patent-eligible subject matter. PO Resp. 19–20; *see* Sur. 8. Patent Owner has not explained why this difference matters for the patent-eligibility inquiry that we must conduct here. *See id.* We decline to speculate on the basis for Patent Owner’s position. Rather, we observe that the § 101 inquiry is the same regardless of whether it is addressed in the context of examination, as in *Smith*, or in the context of a contested proceeding over an issued patent, as in the case here. Thus, we are not persuaded that *Smith* is distinguishable merely because our § 101 inquiry arises in a CBM patent review of an issued patent.

FWD 31.

Thus, for the reasons above, we are not persuaded that we have misapprehended or overlooked evidence based on these arguments.

*E. Significantly More*

Patent Owner further argues that

[t]he claims of the ‘987 patent add “forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands.” This element is significantly more than the defined skilled artisan would consider well-understood, routine, and conventional in 2004, as supported by the unrefuted evidence provided by Patent Owner (see PO Response at 16-18, PO Sur-Reply p 5-6). The evidence of what is well-understood, routine, and conventional in 2004 is found in the prosecution history of US Patent 7,325,806 (the ‘806 patent), where the Examiner states “closest prior art of reference was Malcolm. His teachings however fail to anticipate or render obvious applicant’s invention.” The Decision states that bonus hands were well-known at the time of the invention, *but nowhere in the Decision does it state that “forming only one bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands” was well-known.*

Reh’g Req. 15–16 (emphasis added).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

We disagree with Patent Owner’s reading of our FWD. First, as discussed above, we explained that the challenged claims use conventional and well-understood techniques, i.e., rules for playing a game. FWD 40–46; *see id.* at 43–44 (“[T]he Examiner’s reasons for allowance are directed to novelty and nonobviousness, not eligibility. But the fact that the claims may be novel or nonobvious, thereby meeting the patentability requirements of § 102 and § 103, has no bearing on whether the challenged claims are patent-eligible under § 101.”). In view of this disclosure, we determine that the ’987 patent expressly acknowledges that any allegedly inventive concepts involving (a) placing a bonus wager; (b) dealing out cards to each player; (c) forming the bonus hand; (d) identifying a winning player; and (e) paying the winning player were merely well-understood, routine, and conventional steps for playing a card game.

Further, we explained that “each of the steps of claim 1, including Step C and Step D relied upon by Patent Owner to argue the claims add ‘significantly more’ than just the abstract idea, are part of the rules of the wagering game using a generic deck of cards.” *Id.* at 42. In this way, the challenged claims are similar to those at issue in *Smith* because “[t]he wagering game claimed in *Smith*, reciting rules for a wagering game that use a standard deck of cards, was held to be an abstract idea.” *Id.* (citing *Smith*, 815 F.3d [at] 819.). The Federal Circuit determined in *Smith* that the “shuffling and dealing a standard deck of cards are ‘purely conventional’ activities” that do render the claims patent eligible. *Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819. As discussed in the FWD, the same rationale applies here where Step C is a

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

conventional activity of gameplay that involves the forming of a bonus hand. For these reasons, we are not persuaded we overlooked or misapprehended evidence or arguments on this basis.

### III. CONCLUSION

Based on the foregoing, Patent Owner fails to show that the Final Written Decision overlooks or misapprehends a matter previously addressed by Patent Owner.

### IV. ORDER

For the reasons given, it is ORDERED that the Patent Owner's Rehearing Request is *denied*.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent 7,451,987 B1

For PETITIONER:

Gene Lee  
PERKINS COIE LLP  
lee-ptab@perkinscoie.com

For PATENT OWNER:

Richard Baker  
NEW ENGLAND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY, LLC  
rbaker@newenglandip.com

Steven Martin  
ALTMAN & MARTIN  
smartin@altmartlaw.com

[Trials@uspto.gov](mailto:Trials@uspto.gov)  
571-272-7822

Paper 19  
Entered: June 22, 2018

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

---

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

---

BALLY GAMING, INC., DBA BALLY TECHNOLOGIES,  
Petitioner,

v.

NEW VISION GAMING & DEVELOPMENT, INC.  
Patent Owner.

---

Case CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

---

Before FRANCES L. IPPOLITO, KEVIN W. CHERRY, and  
CHRISTOPHER G. PAULRAJ, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

IPPOLITO, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

DECISION  
Institution of Covered Business Method Patent Review  
*37 C.F.R. § 42.208*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

## I. INTRODUCTION

Petitioner, Bally Gaming, Inc., DBA Bally Technologies, filed a Petition seeking a covered business method (“CBM”) patent review of U.S. Patent No. 7,451,987 B1 (Ex. 1001, “’987 patent”), pursuant to § 18 of the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act (“AIA”). In the Petition (Paper 2, “Pet.”), Petitioner challenges claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent. Pet. 24–29. Patent Owner, New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc., filed a Preliminary Response (Paper 6, “Prelim. Resp.”) opposing institution of a review. Following authorization by the panel (Paper 10), Petitioner filed a Reply (Paper 13, “Reply”) to the Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response and Patent Owner filed a Sur-Reply (Paper 18, “Sur-Reply”) to Petitioner’s Reply.

We have authority under 35 U.S.C. § 324. Under 35 U.S.C. § 324(a), “[t]he Director may not authorize a post-grant review to be instituted unless the Director determines that . . . it is more likely than not that at least 1 of the claims challenged in the petition is unpatentable.”

On the current record, Petitioner demonstrates sufficiently that the ’987 patent is a covered business method patent, and that it is more likely than not that claims 1–12 are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101 as directed to non-statutory subject matter. Therefore, we institute a CBM patent review for claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent based upon Petitioner’s challenge.

### A. *Related Matters*

The parties represent that they are involved in a lawsuit alleging a breach of an existing patent license agreement in *New Vision Gaming &*

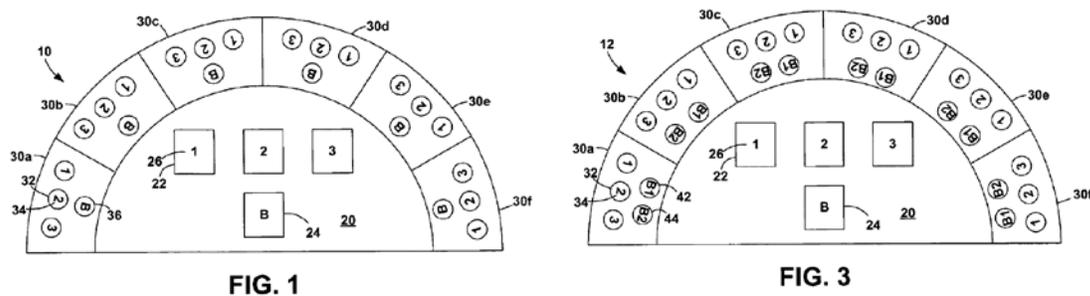
CBM2018-00006  
 Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

*Development, Inc. v. Bally Gaming, Inc.*, 2:17-cv-1559 (D. Nev. June 2, 2017) (“Nevada Suit”). Pet.

7–9; see Prelim. Resp. 4.

### B. The '987 Patent

The '987 patent is directed generally to a method of playing a bonus wager in a card game. Ex. 1001, (54). The '987 patent further describes the invention as “a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a face up card from each hand of a group of hands of a base [card] game.” Ex. 1001, 2:51–53. Referring to Figures 1 and 3 (reproduced below), the '987 patent teaches that on playing surfaces 10, 12, central dealer position 20 has a plurality of player hand locations 22, one for each player hand to be dealt. *Id.* at 3:41–51.



Figures 1 and 3 show a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand. *Id.* at 2:34–36, 38–40.

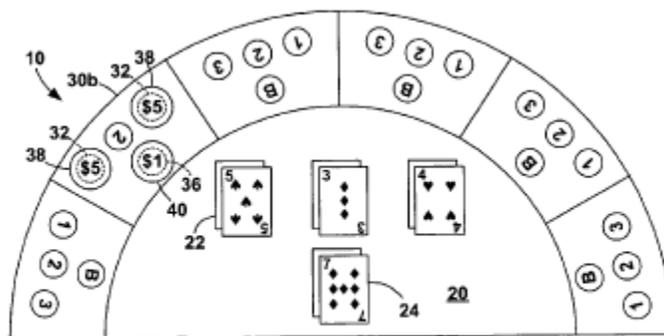
As shown in Figures 1 and 3, dealer position 20 has banker hand location 24 for the one banker hand. *Id.* at 3:50–53. Symbols 26 at each player hand location 22 are the player hand identifiers, which are typically numerals running sequentially from “1”. *Id.* at 3:53–55. According to these figures, “[e]ach player position 30 includes a symbol 32 containing a player

CBM2018-00006  
 Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

hand identifier 34 corresponding to each player hand location 22. Ex. 1001, 3:58–60. The '987 patent provides that the example of Figure 1 has a single bonus wager symbol 36 for one bonus and the example of Figure 3 as two bonus wager symbols 42, 44 for two bonuses. Ex. 1001, 3:64–67.

To play the game, each player chooses the player hand or hands that she thinks will beat the banker hand in the base game. Ex. 1001, 4:1–3.

Figure 2 is provided below to better illustrate the described game.



**FIG. 2**

In Figure 2, the selections are made by placing the amount to be wagered on the corresponding player hand identifier symbol 32 of the player position 30. *Id.* at 4:3–5. The wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers. *Id.* at 5:2–7. In the example of Figure 2, the player at the second player position 30b (player 2) has placed a \$5 chip 38 on each identifier symbol 32 for player hands 1 and 3, wagering that player hands 1 and 3 will beat the dealer hand. Ex. 1001, 4:7–11.

To participate in a bonus wager, the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location. Ex. 1001, 4:15–18. After

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of hands. *Id.* at 4:31–32. The bonus hand of the present invention is composed of at least one card from each player hand. Ex. 1001, 4:41–42. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand and the banker hand(s). Ex. 1001, 4:53–54. The bonus hand may be compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the bonus hand is a winning hand and the player placing a bonus wager is a winner. Ex. 1001, 5:5–7.

*C. Illustrative Claim*

Of the challenged claims 1–12, claim 1 is independent. Independent claim 1, reproduced below, is illustrative of the claimed subject matter:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:

(a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;

(b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;

(c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;

(d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and

(e) paying said winning player a payout.

*D. The Asserted Ground*

Petitioner contends claims 1–12 of the '987 patent are unpatentable under 35 U.S.C. § 101 as directed to non-statutory subject matter. Pet. 24–29.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

*E. Claim Construction*

Petitioner proposes constructions for the terms “wager,” “payout,” “card,” “deck of cards,” and “hand.” Pet. 21–22. For the purposes of this Decision, we determine that no express claim construction of any claim term is necessary. *See Vivid Techs., Inc. v. Am. Sci. & Eng’g, Inc.*, 200 F.3d 795, 803 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (Only terms in controversy must be construed and only to the extent necessary to resolve the controversy).

II. MANDATORY NOTICES

As an initial matter, Patent Owner asserts that institution should be denied because the Petition is incomplete and defective. Prelim. Resp. 4–5, 9–11. Specifically, Patent Owner argues the Petition failed to list the Nevada Suit as a related matter as required by 35 U.S.C. § 322(a)(4)<sup>1</sup>; 37 C.F.R. 42.8(b)(2). *Id.*; Sur-Reply 8–9. Further, Patent Owner contends that Petitioner’s Updated Mandatory Notices (Paper 7) listing the Nevada Suit is an unauthorized filing that should be expunged. Sur-Reply 9.

Patent Owner’s position is not persuasive. First, we note that although the “Related Matters” section of the Petition does not include the Nevada Suit (Pet. 2), the Petition, nonetheless, identifies and describes the

---

<sup>1</sup> Patent Owner refers to § 312(a), but that section applies to *inter partes* review. Covered Business Method patent reviews are governed by a similar provision in § 322(a). *See* AIA § 18(a)(1). Because there is no difference in relevant provisions between the two sections, we consider Patent Owner’s references to be to § 322(a).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

Nevada Suit in detail in Section IV.A of the Petition. In particular, the Petition states:

Patent Owner New Vision has accused Bally of breaching a license for the '987 patent, and Bally responded to New Vision's complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the '987 patent is invalid. (Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 2-3; Exs. 1008, 1003, 1004.) New Vision filed a motion to dismiss certain aspects of Bally's pleading but did not object to or move to dismiss Bally's affirmative defense and counterclaim on invalidity. (Ex. 1002 ¶ 4; Ex. 1005.) Accordingly, there is no dispute regarding Bally's standing to seek a declaratory judgment that the '987 patent is invalid and to file this Petition.

Furthermore, Bally has asserted that its relevant games do not fall within the scope of the claims of the '987 patent, and New Vision has expressed disagreement with that assertion. (Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 5-7; Exs. 1006 and 1007.) Accordingly, Bally presented an affirmative defense that it does not infringe the '987 patent, and New Vision did not seek to dismiss or strike that defense. For this additional reason, Bally has standing to bring a declaratory judgment action in district court and to file this Petition.

Pet. 7–8. The Petition refers to and is accompanied by briefs from the Nevada Suit, which clearly identify the Nevada Suit, the involved parties (Petitioner and Patent Owner), and the patents at issue. *See* Ex. 1003 (Complaint); Ex. 1004, 9–14 (Answers and Counterclaims); Ex. 1005 (Motion to Dismiss). Thus, for the purposes of 37 CFR § 42.8, we determine that pages 7 through 8 of the Petition identify sufficiently “any other judicial or administrative matter that would affect, or be affected by, a decision in the proceeding.”

Second, generally, a lapse in compliance with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. § 312(a), which is the corresponding section for *inter partes*

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

review to § 322(a), does not deprive the Board of jurisdiction over the proceeding, or preclude the Board from permitting such lapse to be rectified. *Lumentum Holdings, Inc. v. Capella Photonics, Inc.*, IPR2015-00739, slip op. 5 (PTAB March 4, 2016) (Paper 38) (precedential). Here, because the Petition identifies the Nevada Suit in another section of the Petition, we determine that there is no prejudice to Patent Owner in permitting Petitioner to update its Mandatory Notices (Paper 7), which Petitioner has already done. Patent Owner is a party to the Nevada Suit, and, in fact, initiated the Nevada Suit against the Petitioner. As such, Patent Owner was aware of the related litigation involving the '806 patent and the '987 patent well before the filing of the Petition.

### III. FORUM SELECTION CLAUSE

Patent Owner asserts that on May 28, 2014, Petitioner and Patent Owner entered into a settlement agreement (Ex. 2005 “Agreement”) under which Petitioner was granted a license to the '987 patent and the '806 patent. Ex. 2005, 1; *see* Prelim. Resp. 6. Patent Owner contends that the Agreement contains a forum selection clause that requires all disputes be handled in the courts in the State of Nevada. Prelim. Resp. 6–8. According to Patent Owner, Petitioner has waived its opportunity to seek review by the Board because Section 13.f of the settlement agreement states:

“In the event of any dispute between any of the parties that cannot be resolved amicably, the parties agree and consent to the exclusive jurisdiction of an appropriate state or federal court located within the State of Nevada, Clark County, to resolve any

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

such dispute.”

Ex. 2005, 7–8. We understand Patent Owner’s first argument to be that the Agreement contractually estops or bars Petitioner from seeking a covered business method patent review. *See* Prelim. Resp. 8, 16–18. Patent Owner further argues that we should deny review because federal district courts can enforce venue selection clauses against the Board through injunction “making it unlikely that the PTAB will have the opportunity to find any claims in the ’987 patent unpatentable.” Sur-Reply 5. For additional support, Patent Owner refers to the court’s decision in *Dodocase VR, Inc. vMerchSource, LLC*, 17-cv-07088-EDL (ND Cal, March 26, 2018) ordering the parties in that case to initiate procedures to withdraw the Petitions. Sur-Reply 6–7.

In its Reply, Petitioner counters that the decision in the *Dodocase* is the subject of an emergency appeal to the Federal Circuit, which has stayed the preliminary injunction directing the defendant/petitioner to seek dismissal of PTAB petitions that had been filed against the plaintiff’s patents. Reply 7 (citing Ex. 1028).

Based on the current record, we are not persuaded that institution should be denied on the basis of 35 U.S.C. § 324(a) because a federal district court *could* possibly enforce the forum selection clause against Petitioner. *See* Sur-Reply 5. Unlike *Dodocase*, the instant proceeding does not involve a decision by a federal district court ordering the parties to withdraw the Petition filed with the Patent Trial and Appeal Board. Ex. 1027. Rather, there is no indication, in our record, that either party has requested a federal

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

district court (e.g., the court before which the Nevada Suit is pending) to issue an order requiring Petitioner to withdraw its Petitions. *Cf.* Ex. 1027. At a minimum, Patent Owner has not explained sufficiently how “the Nevada Court would enjoin the PTAB from considering Bally’s Petition if the proceeding continue” when it does not appear from the current record that this issue has been presented to a federal district court. Sur-Reply 8. As such, Patent Owner’s arguments are largely speculative at this point.

Further, as a general matter, Patent Owner has identified no other authority—such as by statute, rule, or binding precedent—that would require us to deny institution of a covered business method patent review based on contractual estoppel. Patent Owner asserts that 35 U.S.C. §§ 317, 327 demonstrate that the Board “regularly accepts and enforces settlement agreements.” Sur-Reply 7. However, these sections only allow (but do not require) the Board to terminate of an ongoing proceeding between parties. Patent Owner has not directed us to any authority that provides explicit support for a contractual bar/estoppel defense against the institution of a covered business method patent review. For example, section 18 of the America Invents Act (AIA) defines a CBM proceeding as following the standards and procedures of post-grant review with the exception of §§ 321(c), 325(b), 325(e)(2), 325(f). With respect to the procedures of post-grant review, we note that chapter 32 provides requirements for, among other things, the contents of a petition (§322), the threshold showing required for institution of a post-grant review (§324), and the conduct of the post-grant review (§326). We do not discern, nor has Patent Owner pointed

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

to, any portions of chapter 32 or § 18 of the AIA, or authority otherwise, that explicitly provide for a contractual estoppel defense. *Cf. Athena Automation Ltd. v. Husky Injection Molding Sys. Ltd.*, Case IPR2013–00290, slip op. at 12–13 (PTAB Oct. 25, 2013) (Paper 18) (precedential) (finding no statutory basis for application of assignor estoppel defense in IPR proceedings).

#### IV. COVERED BUSINESS METHOD

##### A. Background

As noted above, on May 28, 2014, Petitioner and Patent Owner entered into an Agreement (Ex. 2005) that provided Petitioner a license to the '806 patent and the '987 patent. Ex. 2005, 1; *see* Prelim. Resp. 6. Subsequently, a dispute arose between the parties regarding this Agreement, which prompted Patent Owner to file the Nevada Suit. According to Patent Owner's Motion for Partial Summary Judgment filed in the Nevada Suit, "[p]rior to the parties' entering into the Settlement Agreement, (1) NEW VISION obtained separate patents, numbered '806 and '987 (the 'Patents'); (2) NEW VISION accused Defendant [Bally] of using games subject to these Patents; and, (3) Defendant asserted the Patents were invalid." Ex. 1024, 3. Following the execution of the Agreement, Petitioner paid Patent Owner two-and-half years of quarterly payments pursuant to the Agreement's initial three (3) year term. Ex. 2002 ¶ 11. In a February 8, 2017 letter, Petitioner informed Patent Owner that Petitioner was terminating the Agreement and would not renew the Agreement for another three year term. Ex. 1006. Further, in that letter, Petitioner stated that "we have determined that the games at issue do not fall within the scope of the

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

claims of the licensed patents. Accordingly, we will not be paying any royalties to you under the Agreement, including royalties for prior periods of time.” Ex. 1006. In its written response on June 7, 2017, Patent Owner issued a demand for payment and further asserted that

Baily’s obligation to make quarterly payments is simply not dependent upon the use or applicability of the patents but is based upon time and the use of specific games. Again, none of the contractual conditions that would allow Bally to stop payment have occurred.”

Ex. 1007. Enclosed with Patent Owner’s letter was a copy of a complaint that initiated the Nevada Suit. *Id.*

In the Nevada Suit, Patent Owner has asserted several causes of action, including breach of contract, unjust enrichment, and breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing. Patent Owner has not asserted a patent infringement action in the Nevada Suit. Ex. 2002. In Petitioner’s Answer and Counterclaims, Petitioner asserts a defense of non-infringement and a counterclaim for declaratory judgment of invalidity of the ’806 patent and ’987 patent. Ex. 2001, 7, 13–14. Patent Owner has moved to dismiss some of Petitioner’s counterclaims in the Nevada Suit, but Patent Owner’s motion does not seek to dismiss Petitioner’s counterclaim for declaratory judgment of invalidity. Ex. 1005.

With respect to the record in the instant proceeding, Patent Owner maintains that it has not revoked the license, and, therefore, Petitioner is licensed and does not infringe the ’806 patent and the ’987 patent. Prelim. Resp. 13. Patent Owner further maintains that the related district court litigation is a breach of contract suit and that Petitioner has not been sued for

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

infringement. Prelim. Resp. 13 (citing Ex. NVG2002).

*B. Standing to File a Petition for Covered Business Method Patent Review*

Under § 18(a)(1)(B) of the America Invents Act (AIA), “[a] person may not file a petition for a transitional proceeding with respect to a covered business method patent unless the person or the person’s real party in interest or privy has been sued for infringement of the patent or has been charged with infringement under that patent.” AIA § 18(a)(1)(B) (emphasis added); *see also* 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a). Petitioner contends that this standing requirement is satisfied because Patent Owner New Vision has accused Bally of breaching a license for the ’987 patent, and Bally responded to New Vision’s complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the ’987 patent is invalid.” Pet. 7.

After considering the parties’ arguments, including those set forth in their supplemental briefs, we determine that Petitioner has met its burden of demonstrating that it is eligible to bring this CBM review. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 42.304(a).

*1. Whether Petitioner Has Been “Sued for Infringement”*

To start, we note that Patent Owner has not sued Petitioner for infringement. Ex. 2002. In the Nevada Suit, Patent Owner characterizes the action as containing state causes of action for breach of contract, unjust enrichment, breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing, accounting, and declaratory relief. Ex. 2002; *see* Prelim. Resp. 12.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

## 2. Charged with Infringement

Next we determine whether Petition has been “charged with infringement.” Our rules provide that “[c]harged with infringement means “a real and substantial controversy regarding infringement of a covered business method patent exists such that the petitioner would have standing to bring a declaratory judgment action in Federal court.” 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a). The Declaratory Judgment Act provides that “[i]n a case of actual controversy within its jurisdiction, ... any court of the United States, upon the filing of an appropriate pleading, may declare the rights and other legal relations of any interested party seeking such declaration.” 28 U.S.C. § 2201(a).

In *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, the Supreme Court stated that the test for whether an “actual controversy” exists is “whether the facts alleged, under all the circumstances, show that there is a substantial controversy, between parties having adverse legal interests, of sufficient immediacy and reality to warrant the issuance of a declaratory judgment.” 549 U.S. 118, 127 (2007) (internal quotation marks omitted). Further, our reviewing court has instructed that *MedImmune* relaxed the test for establishing jurisdiction, but “did not change the bedrock rule that a case or controversy must be based on a real and immediate injury or threat of future injury that is caused by the defendants—an objective standard that cannot be met by a purely subjective or speculative fear of future harm.” *Prasco, LLC v. Medicis Pharm. Corp.*, 537 F.3d 1329, 1339 (Fed. Cir. 2008). The Federal Circuit has further explained that

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

“jurisdiction generally will not arise merely on the basis that a party learns of the existence of a patent owned by another or even perceives such a patent to pose a risk of infringement, without some affirmative act by the patentee.” *SanDisk*, 480 F.3d at 1381. Instead, we have required “conduct that can be reasonably inferred as demonstrating intent to enforce a patent.” *Hewlett–Packard Co. v. Acceleron LLC*, 587 F.3d 1358, 1363 (Fed. Cir. 2009)

*Asia Vital Components Co. v. Asetek Danmark A/S*, 837 F.3d 1249, 1253 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

Turning to the facts before us, in the Petition, Petitioner asserts standing under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(a) to file this Petition because Patent Owner New Vision has accused Bally of breaching a license for the '988 patent, and Bally responded to New Vision's complaint in part with an affirmative defense and counterclaim that the '987 patent is invalid. Pet. 7. In the Petitioner's Reply to Patent Owner's Preliminary Response, Petitioner adds that the Nevada Suit in federal district court already includes Petitioner's declaratory judgment counterclaim for patent invalidity, which Patent Owner has not moved to dismiss. Reply 3–4 (citing Ex. 1005; Ex. 1007; Ex. 2005 Sec. 3). Further, Petitioner asserts separately that it was charged with infringement at the time the Petition was filed in December 2017 because Petitioner did not renew the Agreement after the expiration of the initial term (on May 28, 2017) and a real and substantial controversy about infringement existed at the time of filing of the Petition. Reply 5. Petitioner explains that the same dispute regarding infringement that had been resolved by the Agreement arose again when the Agreement expired because Petitioner's post-expiration activities are not covered by the license.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

Reply. 4–5 (citing Ex. 1007, 1). Petitioner also asserts that Patent Owner’s Motion for Partial Summary Judgment in the Nevada Suit confirms that the Agreement resolved an infringement dispute between the parties. Reply 5 (citing Ex. 2005).

Petitioner adds that it is not estopped from filing this Petition because neither Bally, nor any real party in interest or privy, has previously challenged the patentability of the claims of the ’987 patent. Pet. 8–9 Petitioner asserts that it is not barred from filing this petition under 37 C.F.R. § 42.302(c) because it has not filed a civil action challenging the validity of any claim of this patent, and its counterclaim of invalidity does not constitute a civil action challenging the validity of a claim of the ’987 patent. Pet. 8–9.

In its Preliminary Response, Patent Owner maintains that it has not charged Petitioner with infringement because the royalties from the Agreement “are not based on infringement but on the term and the use of a specific game.” Prelim. Resp. 12. Patent Owner adds that it has not revoked the license to Petitioner and, thus, because Bally’s products are covered by a license under the settlement agreement, they do not infringe. Prelim. Resp. 13–15. Patent Owner further contends that a breach of contract action is not necessarily an infringement suit. Prelim. Resp. 14–15. In Patent Owner’s Sur-Reply to Petitioner’s Reply, Patent Owner argues that Petitioner’s “fear of infringement does not create standing” and previous claims of infringement occurred prior to the effective date of the Agreement. Sur-Reply 3–4.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

We have reviewed Petitioner’s and Patent Owner’s submissions and supporting evidence, and we determine that, on this record, Petitioner has established sufficiently the facts taken together demonstrate that it has standing to bring this covered business method patent review. Contrary to Patent Owner’s position, Petitioner’s standing does not hinge on whether the Agreement has terminated or expired. In *MedImmune*, the Supreme Court held that, where a licensor has demanded royalties due under a patent license, a licensee “was not required, insofar as Article III is concerned, to break or terminate [the] license agreement before seeking a declaratory judgment in federal court that the underlying patent is invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed.” 549 U.S. at 137. Here, Patent Owner has stated that “[b]ecause Bally’s products are covered by a license under the settlement agreement (Exhibit NVG2005), they do not infringe.” Prelim. Resp. 15. Patent Owner’s position presumes that Petitioner’s products would infringe the ’806 patent and the ’987 patent if the Agreement (and license) had not been renewed. However, even if the Agreement is in full effect, this fact alone is not dispositive of the standing issue. Rather, the question of jurisdiction does not turn on whether Patent Owner specifically alleged infringement of the asserted patents; instead, the question is whether, under all the circumstances, Patent Owner’s actions “can be reasonably inferred as demonstrating intent to enforce a patent.” *See Asia* at 1254 (citing *Hewlett–Packard*, 587 F.3d at 1363).

Looking to the relationship between the parties, it is undisputed that the Agreement between the parties arose from Patent Owner’s intent to

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

enforce the '806 patent and the '987 patent against the Petitioner. Ex. 1024, 3; Reply 5. Patent Owner acknowledges that prior to the Agreement, Patent Owner “accused Defendant [Bally] of using games subject to these Patents; and . . . Defendant asserted the Patents were invalid.” Ex. 1024, 4. While those past events were allegedly resolved by the execution of the Agreement, we, nonetheless, take into consideration that the parties’ past relationship provides context for the current disputes between them. In particular, there is a dispute as to whether the Agreement and license to the '806 patent and the '987 patent is still in effect; whether Petitioner’s products/activities infringe; and whether the patents are valid. Prelim. Resp. 13–15; Reply 3–5; Sur-Reply 3–5. Thus, the current disputes between the parties are clearly rooted in the original allegations of infringement that led to the signing of the Agreement in the first place, and which continue to be at issue in the contract dispute between the parties.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, taking

---

<sup>2</sup> This is in contrast to the situation in *TicketNetwork, Inc. v. CEATS, LLC*, Case CBM2018-00004 (PTAB May 24, 2018) (Paper 19), where the challenged patent was only one of a large portfolio of patents and the undisputed evidence showed that Petitioner had neither undertaken any conduct that remotely could be within the scope of the claims nor even alleged that such conduct was or may take place in the future. *Id.* at 15–16. Here, in contrast, Petitioner acknowledges that it offers and continues to offer games that, although Petitioner denies infringe the patents, Patent Owner does contend are within the scope of the challenged patents. Ex. 1002 ¶¶ 5–7; Exs. 1006 and 1007. Moreover, the record in *TicketNetwork* included Petitioner’s admissions made to convince the district court to dismiss its declaratory judgment action without prejudice that Patent Owner had no intent at that time to sue for infringement. *Id.* at 12–13. No such admissions exist here, and, in fact, Petitioner’s

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

into account the full relationship between the parties and the particular circumstances in this case, we determine that Patent Owner's statements and actions are sufficient to establish that there was a substantial controversy between the parties sufficient to establish standing under relevant case law.

*C. Covered Business Method Patent Review Eligibility*

Section 18 of the AIA further provides that

the term “covered business method patent” means a patent that claims a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service, except that the term does not include patents for technological inventions.

AIA § 18(d)(1); *see* 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(a). A patent need have only one claim directed to a covered business method to be eligible for review. *See* Transitional Program for Covered Business Method Patents—Definitions of Covered Business Method Patent and Technological Invention; Final Rule, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,734, 48,736 (Aug. 14, 2012) (“Final Rule”). Thus, we must “examine the claims when deciding whether a patent is a CBM patent.” *Blue Calypso, LLC v. Groupon, Inc.*, 815 F.3d 1331, 1340 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (emphasis omitted).

1. *Used in the Practice, Administration, or Management of a Financial Product or Service*

Petitioner asserts that all claims of the '987 patent claim methods that

---

counterclaim for declaratory judgment of invalidity continues in district court.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

are expressly financial in nature because claims 1–12 recite a “wager” and “payout” that involve betting on games of chance. Pet. 12–16. Patent Owner does not contest Petitioner’s assertion in its Preliminary Response.

For the purposes of this Decision, we note that the language of claim 1 and the disclosure of the ’987 patent are consistent with Petitioner’s position. The current record shows that at least one claim, such as independent claim 1, reproduced above, recites a method of playing a game that involves the placement of a “bonus wager” and “paying” a “winning player a payout.” Claim 1. The ’987 patent teaches that

[i]n general, there are several forms of bonus wagers. In the bonus bet, the bonus wager goes to the banker and any winnings are paid by the banker as a fixed multiple of the wagered amount. In a jackpot, the bonus wager goes into a pot and winnings are paid from the pot as a percentage of the pot and/or a fixed amount. If the jackpot falls below a predetermined minimum value, the banker may add to the pot to restore the minimum value. In a set jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot for each game is fixed, but the fixed amount may be adjusted periodically, for example, after the jackpot is won. If more than one player wins a set jackpot, each winner is paid a predetermined amount. In a progressive jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot increases for each game played during which the jackpot is not won. If more than one player wins a progressive jackpot, its value is divided equally among the winners. Optionally, the jackpots from more than one table may be linked together as a single jackpot.

Ex. 1001, 3:16–32.

In an example bonus wager game, the ’987 patent teaches that “[t]he wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers.” Ex. 1001, 4:5–7.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

Further, “[t]o participate in the bonus wager . . . the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location.” Ex. 1001, 4:15–17.

The ’987 patent also discloses that

[i]n the example of FIG. 2, player 2 has placed a \$1 chip 40 on the bonus wager symbol 36, wagering that the bonus hand will be a winning hand. In the example of FIG. 4, player 3 has placed a \$2 chip 48 on the first bonus wager symbol 42, wagering that the first bonus hand will be a winning hand, and a \$5 chip 50 on the second bonus wager symbol 44, wagering that the second bonus hand will be a winning hand.

Ex. 1001, 4:23–31.

Continuing with the example shown in Figure 2, with respect to “paying” a “payout,” the ’987 patent teaches that players who

played the bonus wager receive a predetermined amount of winnings that is determined by the rank of the bonus hand . . . [and] Tables 1 and 2 show examples of winning multiples under the ‘Bonus Bet Payout’ column. For the example bonus hand of FIG. 2, player 2 wins \$6 under the poker rankings of Table 1 because player 2 wagered \$1 and the bonus hand is a straight, which pays 6-1.

Ex. 1001, 5:40–49.

Further, the claimed method recited in claim 1 is not merely “incidental to” or “complementary to” a financial activity because the claim is expressly directed to the financial service of placing bonus wagers and paying winning players payouts based on a game of chance with a deck of cards. *See Unwired Planet, LLC v. Google Inc.*, 841 F.3d 1376, 1382 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

2. Technical Invention

Under AIA § 18(d)(1), “the term ‘covered business method patent’ . . . does not include patents for technological inventions.” Under 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b), “[i]n determining whether a patent is for a technological invention,” we consider “whether [1] the claimed subject matter as a whole recites a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art, and [2] solves a technical problem using a technical solution,” respectively, the first and second prongs of the technical invention exception.

In general, the Office Patent Trial Practice Guide provides the following guidance with respect to claim content that typically would exclude a patent from the category of a technological invention:

- (a) Mere recitation of known technologies, such as computer hardware, communication or computer networks, software, memory, computer-readable storage medium, scanners, display devices or databases, or specialized machines, such as an ATM or point of sale device.
- (b) Reciting the use of known prior art technology to accomplish a process or method, even if the process or method is novel and non-obvious.
- (c) Combining prior art structures to achieve the normal, expected, or predictable result of that combination.

Office Patent Trial Practice Guide, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,756, 48,763–64 (Aug. 14, 2012). With respect to the first prong of 42.301(b), Petitioner argues that the ’987 patent does not recite any technological elements and is not directed to any technological invention. Pet. 18. According to Petitioner, “the claims describe the rules for playing a wagering game and have almost no physical aspect. The only physical aspects recited in the

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

claims are cards and the players playing the card game, which are conventional, generic, and non-technological.” *Id.*

In viewing the claim language and disclosure of the ’987 patent, we agree with Petitioner that the express language of the claims, such as claim 1, recite physical aspects such as cards and non-physical aspects such as the steps for players to play a card game and a “payout,” “wager,” “predetermined rank,” etc. *See* Pet. 18–20; Ex. 1001, claim 1. Further, we are persuaded by Petitioner’s arguments that these are not novel or nonobvious technological features. According to the ’987 patent, playing card games, use of bonus wagers, and ranking for payout were known and conventional. Ex. 1001, 1:39–43 (“Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player’s hand is compared to the banker’s hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player’s hand.”); *id.* at 2:55–60 (“There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand.”). Patent Owner does not contest Petitioner’s position in its Preliminary Response.

Thus, based on the preliminary record, we determine that Petitioner sufficiently shows that at least claim 1, discussed above, does not recite a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art. Given that determination, we need not reach the second prong of whether the claim solves a technical problem using a technical solution. Based on the

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

foregoing, on this preliminary record, Petitioner persuasively shows that the '987 patent is not exempt from CBM review based on a “technological invention” exception under 37 C.F.R. § 42.301(b).

## V. 35 U.S.C. § 101

### A. *Principles of Law*

Section 101 sets forth four categories of patent eligible subject matter: “Whoever invents or discovers any new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, may obtain a patent therefor, subject to the conditions and requirements of this title.” 35 U.S.C. § 101. The Supreme Court has specified three judicial exceptions to the broad categories of 35 U.S.C. § 101: “laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas.” *Alice Corp. Pty. Ltd. v. CLS Bank Int’l*, 134 S. Ct. 2347, 2354 (2014) (citation omitted); *Gottschalk v. Benson*, 409 U.S. 63, 67 (1972) (“Phenomena of nature, though just discovered, mental processes, and abstract intellectual concepts are not patentable, as they are the basic tools of scientific and technological work.”). Notwithstanding that a law of nature or an abstract idea, by itself, is not patentable, the practical application of these concepts may be deserving of patent protection. *Mayo Collaborative Servs. v. Prometheus Labs., Inc.*, 566 U.S. 66, 70–73 (2012).

The Court clarified the process for analyzing claims to determine whether they are directed to patent-ineligible subject matter. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. 2347. In *Alice*, the Court applied the framework set forth previously in

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

*Mayo*, “for distinguishing patents that claim laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas from those that claim patent-eligible applications of [these] concepts.” *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2355. The first step in the analysis is to “determine whether the claims at issue are directed to one of those patent-ineligible concepts.” *Id.* If the claims are directed to a patent-ineligible concept, the second step in the analysis is to consider the elements of the claims “individually and ‘as an ordered combination’” to determine whether the additional elements “‘transform the nature of the claim’ into a patent-eligible application.” *Id.* (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 78–79). In other words, the second step is to “search for an ‘inventive concept’—i.e., an element or combination of elements that is ‘sufficient to ensure that the patent in practice amounts to significantly more than a patent upon the [ineligible concept] itself.’” *Id.* (quoting *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 72–73) (alterations in original). If the elements involve “well-understood, routine, [and] conventional activity previously engaged in by researchers in the field,” *Mayo*, 566 U.S. at 73, they do not constitute an “inventive concept.”

Noting that the two stages involve “overlapping scrutiny of the content of the claims,” the Federal Circuit has described “the first-stage inquiry as looking at the ‘focus’ of the claims, their ‘character as a whole,’ and the second-stage inquiry (where reached) as looking more precisely at what the claim elements add—specifically, whether, in the Supreme Court’s terms, they identify an ‘inventive concept’ in the application of the ineligible matter to which (by assumption at stage two) the claim is directed.” *Electric Power Grp., LLC v. Alstom S.A.*, 830 F.3d 1350, 1353 (Fed. Cir. 2016).

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

*B. Alice-Mayo, First Step*

In determining whether a method or process claim recites an abstract idea, we must examine the claim as a whole. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2355 n.3. Relevant to the first step inquiry, the prohibition against patenting an abstract idea “cannot be circumvented by attempting to limit the use of [an abstract idea] to a particular technological environment or adding insignificant postsolution activity.” *Bilski v. Kappos*, 561 U.S. 593, 610–11 (2010) (citation and internal quotation marks omitted); *see Electric Power*, 830 F.3d at 1355 (“[L]imiting the claims to the particular technological environment of power-grid monitoring is, without more, insufficient to transform them into patent-eligible applications of the abstract idea at their core.”). Courts have recognized numerous categories of abstract ideas, such as “methods of organizing human activity or “a fundamental economic practice long prevalent in our system of commerce,” *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2356 (citation omitted).

Further, in determining whether a claimed method’s “character as a whole” is directed to an abstract idea, the Supreme Court and the Federal Circuit “have found it sufficient to compare claims at issue to those claims already found to be directed to an abstract idea in previous cases.” *Enfish, LLC v. Microsoft Corp.*, 822 F.3d 1327, 1334–35 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *see also Intellectual Ventures I LLC*, 792 F.3d at 1367 (“The abstract idea here is not meaningfully different from the ideas found to be abstract in other cases before the Supreme Court and [the Federal Circuit].”). In undertaking that

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

analysis, we recognize that claims that “purport to improve the functioning of the computer itself,” or those that “improve an existing technological process’ might not succumb to the abstract idea exception.” *Enfish*, 822 F.3d at 1335 (quoting *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2358–59) (alterations omitted).

With respect to the “abstract idea” inquiry, Petitioner asserts that the challenged claims 1–12 of the ’987 patent are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game. Pet. 24. Petitioner treats independent claim 1 as representative and asserts that the “dependent claims add minor variations on the rules set out in independent claim 1.” Pet. 24–25.

Patent Owner’s Preliminary Response does not address Petitioner’s §101 challenge.

For the purposes of this Decision, and based on the current record, we are persuaded that the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea. We agree with Petitioner that the challenged claims are directed to the abstract idea of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game. For example, consistent with Petitioner’s position, claim 1 is expressly directed to a “method of playing game with at least one deck of cards” with the steps of placing a bonus wager (step (a)), forming a bonus hand (step (c)), identifying a winner of the bonus wager (step (d)), and paying the winner (step (e)). Ex. 1001, Claim 1. Additionally, the disclosure in the Specification of the ’987 patent is also consistent with Petitioner’s position. The Specification provides that the described invention is directed to a “method of playing a bonus wager” (Ex. 1001, Title), and “relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands” Ex. 1001, 1:25–28. Further, the Specification describes the mechanics of game play, which involves the house determination of

the rules with which the game will be played, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands, the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

Ex. 1001, 3:33–39.

Furthermore, our reviewing court has found activity similar to that claimed to constitute an abstract idea under the first step of *Alice*. For example, in *In re Smith*, the Applicants appealed an ex parte decision by the Board that affirmed the examiner’s rejection of pending claims under 35 U.S.C. § 101. Claim 1 at issue in *In re Smith* recited:

1. A method of conducting a wagering game comprising:
  - [a] ) a dealer providing at least one deck of ... physical playing cards and shuffling the physical playing cards to form a random set of physical playing cards;
  - [b] ) the dealer accepting at least one first wager from each participating player on a player game hand against a banker’s/dealer’s hand;
  - [c] ) the dealer dealing only two cards from the random set of physical playing cards to each designated player and two cards to the banker/dealer such that the designated player and the banker/dealer receive the same number of exactly two random physical playing cards;
  - [d] ) the dealer examining respective hands to determine in any hand has a Natural 0 count from totaling count from cards,

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

defined as the first two random physical playing cards in a hand being a pair of 5's, 10's, jacks, queens or kings;

[e] ) the dealer resolving any player versus dealer wagers between each individual player hand that has a Natural 0 count and between the dealer hand and all player hands where a Natural 0 is present in the dealer hand, while the dealer exposes only a single card to the players;

[f] ) as between each player and the dealer where neither hand has a Natural 0, the dealer allowing each player to elect to take a maximum of one additional card or standing pat on the initial two card player hand, while still having seen only one dealer card;

[g] ) the dealer/banker remaining pat within a first certain predetermined total counts and being required to take a single hit within a second predetermined total counts, where the first total counts range does not overlap the second total counts range;

[h] ) after all possible additional random physical playing cards have been dealt, the dealer comparing a value of each designated player's hand to a final value of the banker's/dealer's hand wherein said value of the designated player's hand and the banker's/dealer's hand is in a range of zero to nine points based on a pre-established scoring system wherein aces count as one point, tens and face cards count as zero points and all other cards count as their face value and wherein a two-digit hand total is deemed to have a value corresponding to the one's digit of the two-digit total;

[i] ) the dealer resolving the wagers based on whether the designated player's hand or the banker's/dealer's hand is nearest to a value of 0.

*In re Smith*, 815 F.3d 816, 817–818 (Fed. Cir. 2016). Applying the first step of *Alice*, the Federal Circuit determined that

Applicants' claims, directed to rules for conducting a wagering game, compare to other "fundamental economic practice[s]" found abstract by the Supreme Court. *See id.* As the Board

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

reasoned here, “[a] wagering game is, effectively, a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations based on probabilities created during the distribution of the cards.” J.A. 15. In *Alice*, the Supreme Court held that a method of exchanging financial obligations was drawn to an abstract idea. 134 S. Ct. at 2356–57. Likewise, in *Bilski*, the Court determined that a claim to a method of hedging risk was directed to an abstract idea. 561 U.S. at 611, 130 S. Ct. 3218. Here, Applicants’ claimed “method of conducting a wagering game” is drawn to an abstract idea much like *Alice*’s method of exchanging financial obligations and *Bilski*’s method of hedging risk.

*Id.* at 818–819. In the instant case, we note, based on the current record, that claim 1 of the ’987 patent is also drawn to a wagering game that is effectively a method of exchanging and resolving financial obligations (e.g., payout of bonus wagers) based on probabilities created during the distribution of cards. Similar to the claims at issue in *In re Smith*, we are persuaded, for the purposes of this Decision, that claim 1 of the ’987 patent is directed to an abstract idea allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game.

Viewing each of the remaining challenged claims as a whole does not dissuade us from determining, for purposes of this Decision, that the challenged claims are directed to an abstract idea. The remaining dependent claims, claims 2–12 recite additional features for gameplay including which cards the bonus hand is formed from (claims 2, 4, 5, and 7–9), the makeup of the plurality of hands (claims 3 and 6), and how the bonus wager/payout is paid (claims 10–12).

Accordingly, the record sufficiently indicates that, at this stage, challenged claims 1–12 are directed to a patent-ineligible abstract idea. Neither do the dependent challenged claims alter our analysis.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

*C. Alice-Mayo, Second Step*

We turn to the second step of the *Alice* inquiry “and scrutinize the claim elements more microscopically” for additional elements that might be understood to “transform the nature of the claim” into a patent-eligible application of an abstract idea. *Electric Power*, 830 F.3d at 1353–54. That is, we determine whether the claims include an “inventive concept,” i.e., an element or combination of elements sufficient to ensure that the patent in practice amounts to significantly more than a patent on the abstract idea itself. *Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2357. “Abstract ideas, including a set of rules for a game, may be patent-eligible if they contain an ‘inventive concept’ sufficient to ‘transform’ the claimed abstract idea into a patent-eligible application.” *In re Smith*, 815 F.3d at 819 (citing *Alice*, 134 S.Ct. at 2357). But appending purely conventional steps to an abstract idea does not supply a sufficiently inventive concept. *Alice*, 134 S.Ct. at 2357–58.

Scrutinizing the recited methods, Petitioner asserts, and we agree on this record, the claimed elements, viewed individually or as an ordered combination, do not transform the nature of the claims into patent-eligible applications of an abstract idea. Pet. 27–29. For example, claim 1 requires the steps of:

- (a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
- (b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
- (c) forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;
- (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

predetermined rank; and

(e) paying said winning player a payout.

Ex. 1001, Claim 1. The '987 patent teaches that forming a bonus hand from a subset of other hands and winning a bonus wager based on a predetermined rank were conventional activities in “casino table games.”

Ex. 1001, 1:30–44. Specifically, the '987 patent discloses:

Many casino table games offer bonus bets or jackpots where players may wager on occurrences that do not affect the outcome of the basic game. These types of bonus bets and jackpots are popular with players. An example of such a bonus bet is the game “21+3” disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,012,719. The game is a standard blackjack game where the player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on whether or not a three-card poker hand made of the player's first two cards and the dealer's face up card is of a certain rank. Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player's hand is compared to the banker's hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player's hand.

*Id.* Thus, based on the current record, we agree with Petitioner that the steps of gameplay required in claim 1, viewed individually and as a whole, recite only prior art conventional activities as described by the '987 patent.

Therefore, based on this record, we determine that claim 1 does not have an “inventive concept” sufficient to “transform” the claimed subject matter into a patent-eligible application of the abstract idea.

Similarly, with respect to dependent claims 2–12, these claims recite additional features related to forming a bonus hand, player hand, and banker hand, and, separately, paying a bonus wager and payout, which are also

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

conventional activities according to the '987 patent. *See* Ex. 1001, 1:30–44.

In view of the foregoing, based on the record before us, we are persuaded by Petitioner's arguments and supporting evidence that, when considered individually and "as an ordered combination," the claim elements of challenged claims 1–12 do no more than apply the abstract concept of allowing bonus wagers in a wagering game, and do not recite anything in a manner sufficient to transform that abstract idea into a patent-eligible invention. *See Alice*, 134 S. Ct. at 2359–60 (citing *Mayo*, 566 U.S. 66 (2012)).

## VI. CONCLUSION

For the foregoing reasons, the information presented in the Petition demonstrates that it is more likely than not that claims 1–12 of the '987 patent are unpatentable based on 35 U.S.C. § 101. We have not, however, made a final determination under 35 U.S.C. § 328(a) as to the patentability of any challenged claim.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> Because this decision refers to material that is the subject of Petitioner's motions to seal, the decision is designated as "Parties and Board Only" in the PTAB E2E system. The parties shall file jointly a *proposed* redacted version of the decision. The redactions should account for the strong public policy in favor of making all information, including confidential information relied upon in a decision in a covered business method patent review, available to the public. *See* TPG, 77 Fed. Reg. at 48,760–61.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

## VII. ORDER

For the reasons given, it is:

ORDERED that, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 324(a), a covered business method patent review of the '987 patent is hereby instituted on the ground that claims 1–12 recite non-statutory subject matter;

FURTHER ORDERED that pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 324(d) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.4, notice is hereby given of the institution of a trial, which commences on the entry date of this decision;

FURTHER ORDERED that Papers 14 and 16 will be expunged; and

FURTHER ORDERED that the parties agree upon and file, as a Paper, a proposed redacted public version of this decision within two weeks of the decision.

CBM2018-00006  
Patent No. 7,451,987 B1

PETITIONER:

Gene W. Lee  
Perkins Coie LLP  
glee@perkinscoie.com

PATENT OWNER:

Richard Baker  
New England Intellectual Property  
rbaker@newenglandip.com

Steven K. Martin  
Altman & Martin  
smartin@altmartlaw.com

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Feola**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,325,806 B1**  
 (45) **Date of Patent:** **Feb. 5, 2008**

(54) **METHOD OF PLAYING A BONUS WAGER**

(75) Inventor: **John Feola**, Medford, MA (US)

(73) Assignee: **New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc.**, North Reading, MA (US)

(\* ) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 54 days.

6,457,714 B1	10/2002	Feola	
6,481,717 B1 *	11/2002	Richardelle	273/292
6,612,927 B1 *	9/2003	Slomiany et al.	463/16
6,698,759 B2 *	3/2004	Webb et al.	273/292
2003/0122305 A1 *	7/2003	Malcolm	273/292
2004/0070146 A1	4/2004	Snow	
2006/0014577 A1 *	1/2006	Snow	463/12
2006/0068863 A1 *	3/2006	Hughes	463/13
2006/0084506 A1 *	4/2006	Yoseloff et al.	463/42
2006/0131807 A1 *	6/2006	Schlumbrecht	273/292
2006/0157934 A1 *	7/2006	Yoseloff et al.	273/292

(21) Appl. No.: **10/913,097**

\* cited by examiner

(22) Filed: **Aug. 6, 2004**

*Primary Examiner*—Eugene Kim

*Assistant Examiner*—Delores R. Collins

(51) **Int. Cl.**  
**A63F 1/00** (2006.01)

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Altman & Martin; Steven K. Martin

(52) **U.S. Cl.** ..... 273/292

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... 273/292  
 See application file for complete search history.

(57) **ABSTRACT**

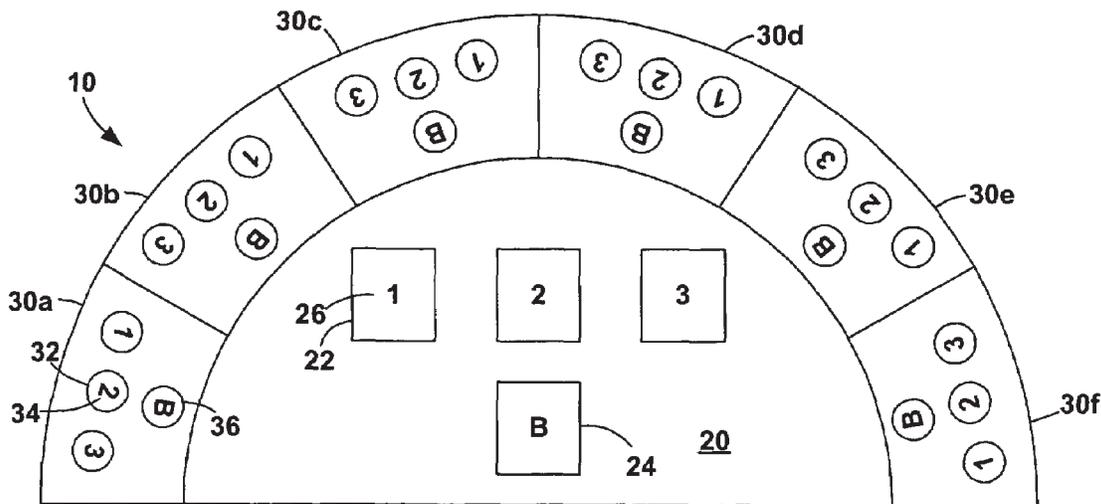
A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards where the game comprises the steps of affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager, dealing out the cards to each of a plurality of hands, forming a bonus hand from one card from each of more than one hand, and identifying the player as a winning player if the player placed the bonus wager and the bonus hand has a predetermined rank.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,489,101 A *	2/1996	Moody	273/292
5,839,731 A	11/1998	Feola	
6,012,719 A	1/2000	Webb	
6,237,916 B1 *	5/2001	Webb	273/292
6,371,867 B1	4/2002	Webb	

**12 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets**



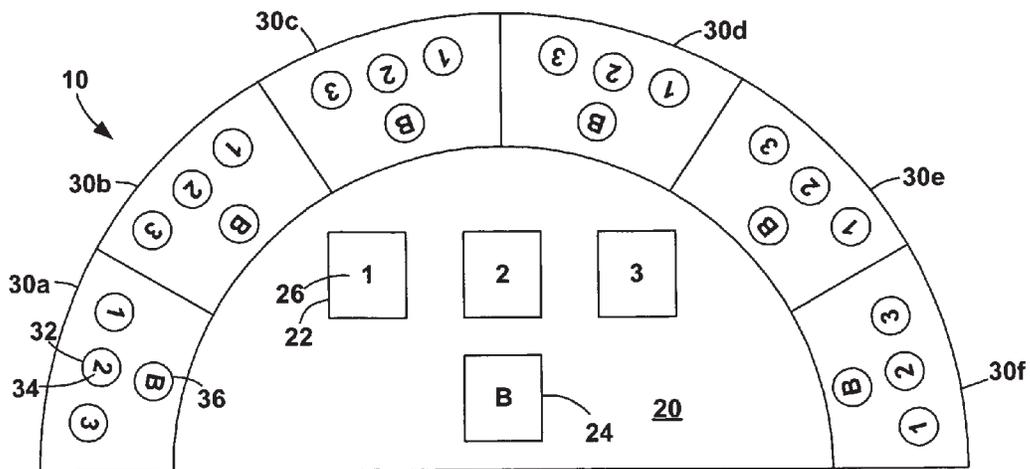


FIG. 1

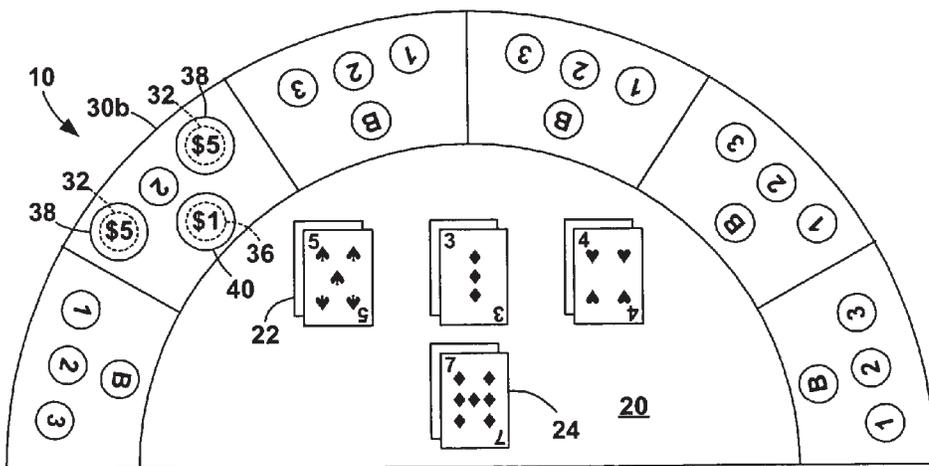


FIG. 2

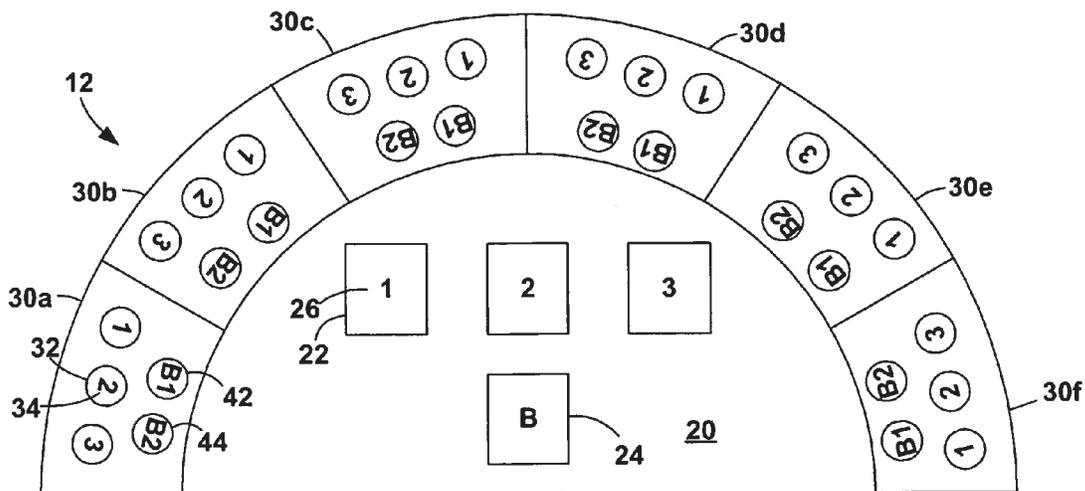


FIG. 3

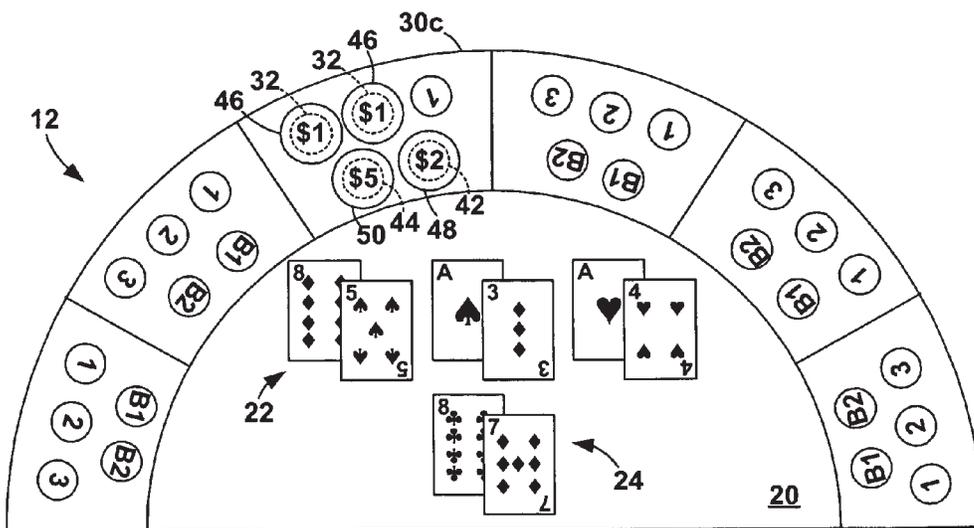


FIG. 4

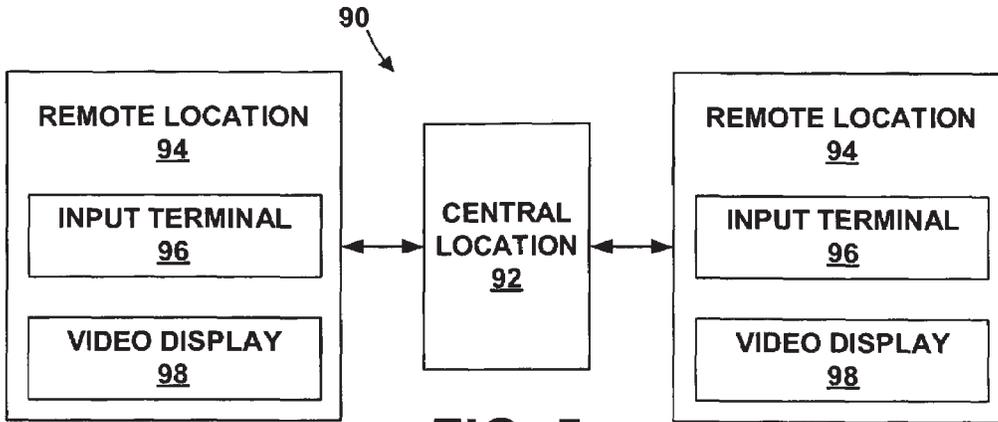


FIG. 5

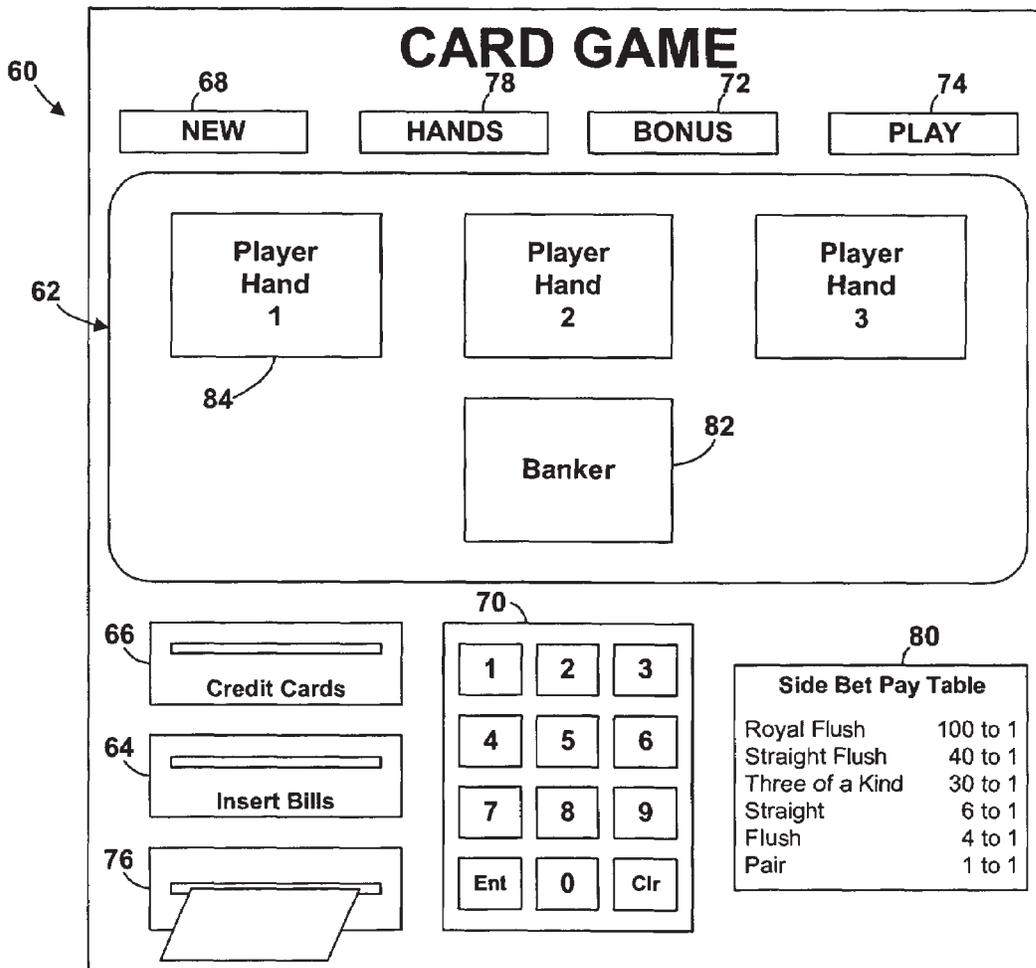


FIG. 6

US 7,325,806 B1

1

**METHOD OF PLAYING A BONUS WAGER****CROSS-REFERENCES TO RELATED APPLICATIONS**

Not Applicable

**STATEMENT REGARDING FEDERALLY SPONSORED RESEARCH OR DEVELOPMENT**

Not Applicable

**REFERENCE TO A SEQUENCE LISTING, A TABLE, OR A COMPUTER PROGRAM LISTING COMPACT DISK APPENDIX**

Not Applicable

**BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION****1. Field of the Invention**

The present invention relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands.

**2. Description of the Related Art**

Many casino table games offer bonus bets or jackpots where players may wager on occurrences that do not affect the outcome of the basic game. These types of bonus bets and jackpots are popular with players. An example of such a bonus bet is the game "21+3" disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,012,719. The game is a standard blackjack game where the player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on whether or not a three-card poker hand made of the player's first two cards and the dealer's face up card is of a certain rank. Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player's hand is compared to the banker's hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player's hand.

**BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

It is an object of the present invention to provide an adjunct to a game for gambling that adds another way to wager on the game.

It is another object to provide a poker-like element to different types of games for gambling.

The present invention is a method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards where the game comprises the steps of affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager, dealing out the cards to each of a plurality of hands, forming a bonus hand from one card from more than one hand, and identifying the player as a winning player if the player placed the bonus wager and the bonus hand has a predetermined rank.

The present invention is a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a card from each of a group of hands of a base game. The base game can be one of any number of games including poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, and pai gow poker. "Card" refers to any representation of a playing card or playing tile, whether real or virtual. The bonus wager can take the form of a bonus bet or a jackpot.

The base game is played on a playing surface that has a central dealer position with a plurality of player hand locations and a banker hand location. The playing surface also has a number of player positions that each have a

2

symbol corresponding to each player hand location and a location for a bonus wager. The player chooses player hands by placing a wager on the corresponding symbol. To participate in the bonus wager, the player places a wager on appropriate the bonus wager location. After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of player and banker hands. The bonus hand, composed of cards from the player hands, is compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the player placing a bonus wager is a winner and the amount of winnings. Typically, the bonus hand will be ranked as a poker hand, but any form of ranking may be used. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of cards from the player hands and the banker hand(s).

The present invention contemplates that the game may be played using other media, such as scratch or pull-tab tickets, video poker-type machines, personal computers, hand-held devices, slot machines, over an on-line computer network, or on another type of one-way or interactive gaming or entertainment equipment, such as keno-style or lottery-style equipment.

Other objects of the present invention will become apparent in light of the following drawings and detailed description of the invention.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

For a fuller understanding of the nature and object of the present invention, reference is made to the accompanying drawings, wherein:

FIG. 1 shows a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand incorporating a single bonus of the present invention;

FIG. 2 shows the table layout of FIG. 1 with a blackjack hand dealt;

FIG. 3 shows a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand incorporating two bonuses of the present invention;

FIG. 4 shows the table layout of FIG. 3 with a blackjack hand dealt;

FIG. 5 shows a block diagram of a keno-style system implementing the basic game of the present invention; and

FIG. 6 shows a video screen implementing the game shown in FIG. 1.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention is a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a face up card from each hand of a group of hands of a base game. The base card game has a number of player hands where at least one card of each player hand and, optionally, the banker hand(s), is dealt face up. There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand. Players do not control the hands, that is, no player hands are assigned to players. The dealer plays all of the hands according to rules that permit little or no discretion in how the hands are played. One such game for poker is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,839,731, Method and Apparatus for Playing a Casino Game. Another such game for blackjack is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/867,019, Method of Playing a Blackjack-type Casino Card Game. Another such game for pai gow is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/890,445, Method of Playing a Pai Gow-type Game.

US 7,325,806 B1

3

The term “card” is used in the present application to indicate a playing card, a playing tile, or any facsimile thereof. For example, a card can be a paper playing card, a physical playing tile, an image of a card or tile on a video display, an image of a card or tile on a scratch ticket, etc. Any representation of a playing card or tile is contemplated. A “deck of cards” refers to one or more complete decks of playing cards or a set of pai gow tiles. A “hand” is the group of cards for a single position. When using playing cards, a hand consists of the cards placed at each player and banker position. When using tiles, a hand consists of the tiles placed at each player and banker position.

In general, there are several forms of bonus wagers. In the bonus bet, the bonus wager goes to the banker and any winnings are paid by the banker as a fixed multiple of the wagered amount. In a jackpot, the bonus wager goes into a pot and winnings are paid from the pot as a percentage of the pot and/or a fixed amount. If the jackpot falls below a predetermined minimum value, the banker may add to the pot to restore the minimum value. In a set jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot for each game is fixed, but the fixed amount may be adjusted periodically, for example, after the jackpot is won. If more than one player wins a set jackpot, each winner is paid a predetermined amount. In a progressive jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot increases for each game played during which the jackpot is not won. If more than one player wins a progressive jackpot, its value is divided equally among the winners. Optionally, the jackpots from more than one table may be linked together as a single jackpot.

Before game play begins, the house determines the rules with which the game will be played, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands, the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

The base game is played on a playing surface, typically a tabletop, although other playing surfaces are contemplated, as described below. Example playing surfaces **10**, **12** for a base game with which the bonus wager of the present invention is played are shown in FIGS. **1** and **3**. These playing surfaces **10**, **12** are merely examples and any other playing surface configuration that provides the functionality needed to play the base game and incorporate the bonus wager of the present invention is contemplated.

The central dealer position **20** has a plurality of player hand locations **22**, one for each player hand to be dealt. The dealer position **20** has a banker hand location **24** for the one banker hand. The symbols **26** at each player hand location **22** are the player hand identifiers, which are typically numerals running sequentially from “1”.

There are a number of player positions **30a-30f** (collectively, **30**) that typically are evenly spaced in a semicircle around the dealer position **20**. Each player position **30** includes a symbol **32** containing a player hand identifier **34** corresponding to each player hand location **22**. Typically, there are six player positions **30**, but because the number of players is not related to the number of player hands, the number of player positions **30** may vary. Each player position **30** also includes a bonus wager symbol. The example of FIG. **1** has a single bonus wager symbol **36** for one bonus and the example of FIG. **3** as two bonus wager symbols **42**, **44** for two bonuses.

To begin the game, each player chooses the player hand or hands that she thinks will beat the banker hand in the base game. The selections are made by placing the amount to be

4

wagered on the corresponding player hand identifier symbol **32** of the player position **30**. The wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers. In the example of FIG. **2**, the player at the second player position **30b** (player **2**) has placed a \$5 chip **38** on each identifier symbol **32** for player hands **1** and **3**, wagering that player hands **1** and **3** will beat the dealer hand. In the example of FIG. **4**, the player at the third player position **30c** (player **3**) has placed a \$1 chip **46** on each identifier symbol **32** for player hands **2** and **3**, wagering that player hands **2** and **3** will beat the dealer hand.

To participate in the bonus wager of the present invention, the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location. The amount to wager may be decided by the player or may be a fixed amount determined by the banker, for example, \$1. If the player decides the amount of the wager, there will typically be a minimum and maximum permitted wager determined by the banker. As with the base game, the wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value. In the example of FIG. **2**, player **2** has placed a \$1 chip **40** on the bonus wager symbol **36**, wagering that the bonus hand will be a winning hand. In the example of FIG. **4**, player **3** has placed a \$2 chip **48** on the first bonus wager symbol **42**, wagering that the first bonus hand will be a winning hand, and a \$5 chip **50** on the second bonus wager symbol **44**, wagering that the second bonus hand will be a winning hand.

After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of hands. In the two examples, the dealer deals out three player hands and a banker hand, placing them in the appropriate locations **22**, **24** of the dealer position **20**. Each hand is dealt the appropriate number of cards for the base game. For example, for five-card poker, five playing cards are dealt, for blackjack and baccarat, two playing cards are dealt, for pai gow tiles, four tiles are dealt, and for pai gow poker, seven playing cards are dealt.

The bonus hand of the present invention is composed of at least one card from each player hand. In the example of FIG. **2**, the bonus hand is composed of the face up cards from each player hand, which means that the bonus hand is a three-card hand composed of a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, and a 4 of hearts. In the example of FIG. **4**, the first three-card bonus hand is composed of the first-dealt cards from each player hand: an 8 of diamonds, an ace of spades, and an ace of hearts. The second three-card bonus hand is composed of the second-dealt cards from each player hand: a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, and a 4 of hearts. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of cards from fewer than all of the player hands.

Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand and the banker hand(s). With this option, the bonus hand of the example of FIG. **2** is a four-card hand composed of a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, a 4 of hearts, and a 7 of diamonds. In the example of FIG. **4**, the first four-card bonus hand is composed of an 8 of diamonds, an ace of spades, an ace of hearts, and an 8 of clubs. The second four-card bonus hand is composed of a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, a 4 of hearts, and a 7 of diamonds. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of cards from fewer than all of the player and banker hand(s).

Optionally, the cards that compose the bonus hand are dealt face up, as in the example of FIG. **2**. When the bonus hand cards are dealt face up, the bonus wager of the present invention can be settled before continuing with the base game. Generally, if the bonus hand cards are dealt face

US 7,325,806 B1

5

down, the base game is completed and the cards revealed before the bonus wager can be settled.

The bonus hand is compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the bonus hand is a winning hand and the player placing a bonus wager is a winner and the amount of winnings. When the base game uses playing cards, the bonus hand is preferably treated as a poker hand and the bonus hand is compared to a table of poker rankings. Table 1 is an example of such a table for a three-card poker hand. Note that the example hand of FIG. 2 is a straight, which is a winning hand according to Table 1.

TABLE 1

Hand	Bonus Bet Payout	Jackpot Payout
Royal Flush	100-1	100% of Jackpot
Straight Flush	40-1	25% of Jackpot
Three of a Kind	30-1	10% of Jackpot
Straight	6-1	\$10
Flush	4-1	\$5
Pair	1-1	\$1

The present invention contemplates that the bonus hand ranking may be determined by other conditions. One condition may be the sum of the values of the cards in the bonus hand. Table 2 is an example of such a table for a three-card hand.

TABLE 2

Bonus Hand Sum	Bonus Bet Payout
3	500-1
4-6	50-1
7-10	5-1
11-15	2-1
16-20	1-1

The players that played the bonus wager receive a predetermined amount of winnings that is determined by the rank of the bonus hand. The predetermined amount may be a multiple of the amount wagered, a percentage of a pot into which the bonus bet is placed, or a fixed amount. Tables 1 and 2 show examples of winning multiples under the "Bonus Bet Payout" column. For the example bonus hand of FIG. 2, player 2 wins \$6 under the poker rankings of Table 1 because player 2 wagered \$1 and the bonus hand is a straight, which pays 6-1. Under the sum rankings of Table 2, player 2 wins \$2, because player 2 wagered \$1 and the bonus hand has a sum of 12, which pays 2-1. Table 1 also shows an example of winning percentages under the "Jackpot Payout" column. Note that not all winnings are a percentage of the jackpot; some are fixed amounts. For the example bonus hand of FIG. 2, player 2 wins \$10, because the bonus hand is a straight.

The present invention contemplates that, rather than being played on a table surface with a live dealer, the game is played using other media, such as scratch or pull-tab tickets, video poker-type machines, personal computers, hand-held devices, slot machines, over an on-line computer network, or on another type of one-way or interactive gaming or entertainment equipment, such as keno-style or lottery-style equipment.

In a keno-style lottery system 90, a block diagram of which is shown in FIG. 5, a player typically makes her choice of player hands at a remote location 94 by marking a slip of paper with the player hands she wishes to wager on, whether or not she wishes to play the bonus wager, and the

6

wager amounts. She gives the slip to a clerk with the amount of the wager, who then scans the slip into a terminal 96 that sends the choices to a central location 92. Alternatively, choices can be made from keys on a keyboard, keys on a key grid, or by boxes on a touch screen grid. Alternatively, the player may request a "quick pick," where the input terminal 96 or central location 92 randomly chooses a hand or hands for the player. The player receives a receipt, such as a paper receipt, or other acknowledgement, such as an indication on a private terminal, indicating the hand or hands chosen for the game and if the bonus wager is played. As the game is being played, the hands are displayed on a video screen 98 or matrix of video screens visible to the players at the remote location 94 from information received from the central location 92.

With individual machines, an example of which is shown in FIG. 6, implementing the embodiment of FIG. 1, each player has her own terminal 60. An example is a video machine at a gaming establishment. The banker hand 82 and player hands 84 are displayed on the player's video screen 62. Prior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66. The player presses the NEW button 68 and indicates the amount to wager for the game, typically by entering an amount on the keypad 70. The player begins a game by pressing the HANDS button 78 and entering the player hands on which the player wishes to wager using the keypad 70 or a touch screen 62. If the player wishes to play the bonus wager, she presses the BONUS button 72 and indicates the amount to wager. The player presses the PLAY button 74 to deal the cards. If the player played the bonus wager, the rank of the bonus hand comprised of the face up cards of the player hands is compared to the table 80 of ranked hands for the bonus wager. If the bonus hand rank is in the table 80, the winning amount is credited to the player and may be printed on a voucher 76 for payment by a cashier or they may be paid in coins or other monetary tokens by the terminal itself. After the bonus wager is settled, the base game is completed and any winnings are paid out in the same fashion.

Alternatively, the standalone machine may be a personal computer, hand-held device, or mobile telephone. The standalone machine can be part of a wired or wireless network. Wagers can be made by debits to credit cards, debit cards, or other cash equivalent. Payouts can be made by crediting credit cards, debit cards, or other bank account, by dispatching gifts, or by any other method wherein the player is credited with the amount won.

Thus, it has been shown and described a bonus wager that satisfies the objects set forth above.

Since certain changes may be made in the present disclosure without departing from the scope of the present invention, it is intended that all matter described in the foregoing specification and shown in the accompanying drawings be interpreted as illustrative and not in a limiting sense.

I claim:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:

- (a) affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
- (b) dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
- (c) forming only one bonus hand from one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;

US 7,325,806 B1

7

- (d) identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and
- (e) paying said winning player a payout.
- 2. The method of claim 1 wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.
- 3. The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands.
- 4. The method of claim 3 wherein said bonus hand is formed from one card from each of said player hands.
- 5. The method of claim 3 wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.
- 6. The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands and at least one banker hand.

8

- 7. The method of claim 6 wherein said bonus hand is formed from one card from each of said player hands and one card from each of said at least one banker hand.
- 8. The method of claim 6 wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.
- 9. The method of claim 1 wherein said bonus hand is a poker hand.
- 10. The method of claim 1 wherein said payout is a multiple of said bonus wager.
- 11. The method of claim 1 wherein said payout is paid by a banker.
- 12. The method of claim 1 wherein said bonus wager is placed in a pot and said payout is paid from said pot.

\* \* \* \* \*

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Feola**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,451,987 B1**  
 (45) **Date of Patent:** **\*Nov. 18, 2008**

- (54) **METHOD OF PLAYING A BONUS WAGER**
- (75) Inventor: **John Feola**, North Reading, MA (US)
- (73) Assignee: **New Vision Gaming & Development, Inc.**, North Reading, MA (US)
- (\* ) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.
- This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

5,839,731 A	11/1998	Feola	
6,012,719 A	1/2000	Webb	
6,237,916 B1 *	5/2001	Webb	273/292
6,371,867 B1	4/2002	Webb	
6,481,717 B1 *	11/2002	Richardelle	273/292
6,612,927 B1 *	9/2003	Slomiany et al.	463/16
6,698,759 B2 *	3/2004	Webb et al.	273/292
7,325,806 B1 *	2/2008	Feola	273/292
2003/0122305 A1 *	7/2003	Malcolm	273/292
2004/0070146 A1	4/2004	Snow	
2006/0014577 A1 *	1/2006	Snow	463/12
2006/0068863 A1 *	3/2006	Hughes	463/13
2006/0084506 A1 *	4/2006	Yoseloff et al.	463/42
2006/0131807 A1 *	6/2006	Schlumbrecht	273/292
2006/0157934 A1 *	7/2006	Yoseloff et al.	273/292

- (21) Appl. No.: **11/776,613**
- (22) Filed: **Jul. 12, 2007**

**Related U.S. Application Data**

- (63) Continuation of application No. 10/913,097, filed on Aug. 6, 2004, now Pat. No. 7,325,806.

- (51) **Int. Cl.**  
**A63F 1/00** (2006.01)
- (52) **U.S. Cl.** ..... **273/292**
- (58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... None  
 See application file for complete search history.

**References Cited**

**U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

- 5,489,101 A \* 2/1996 Moody ..... 273/292

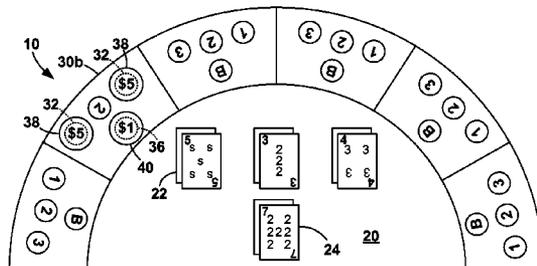
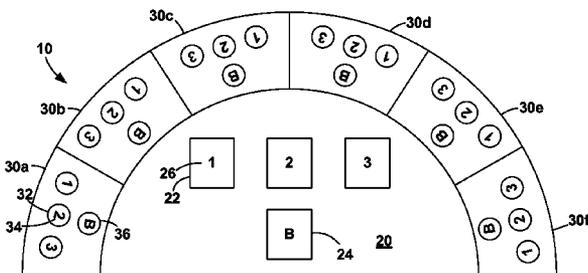
\* cited by examiner

*Primary Examiner*—Gene Kim  
*Assistant Examiner*—Dolores Collins  
 (74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Altman & Martin; Steven K Martin

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards where the game comprises the steps of affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager, dealing out the cards to each of a plurality of hands, forming a bonus hand from at least one card from each of more than one hand, and identifying the player as a winning player if the player placed the bonus wager and the bonus hand has a predetermined rank.

**12 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets**



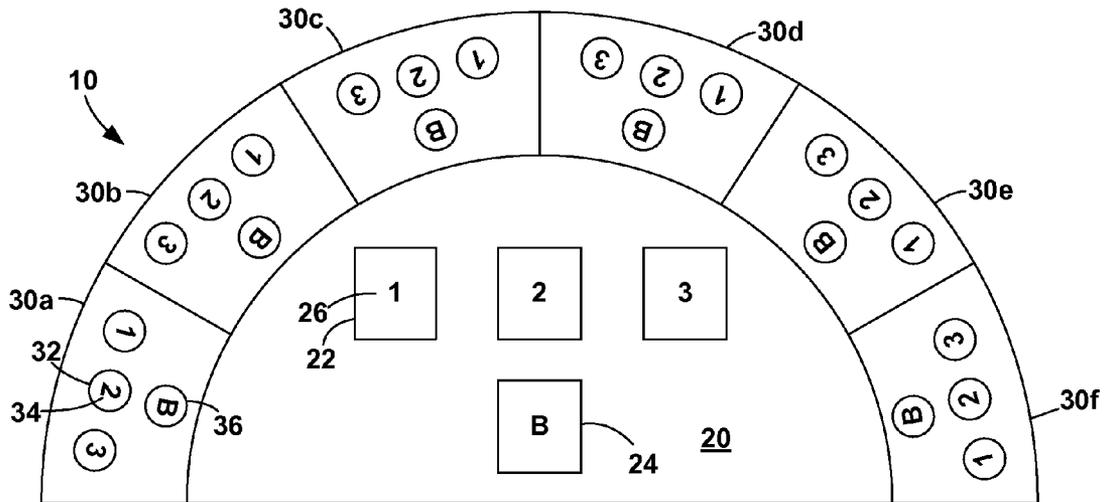


FIG. 1

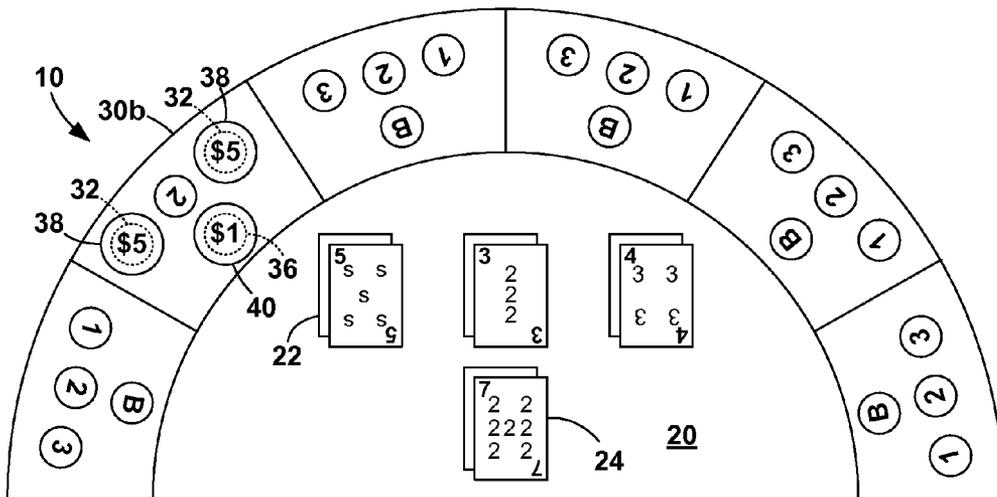


FIG. 2



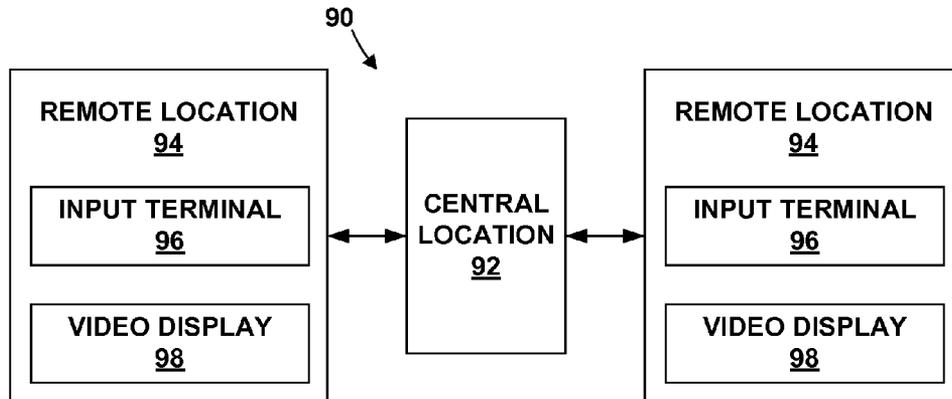


FIG. 5

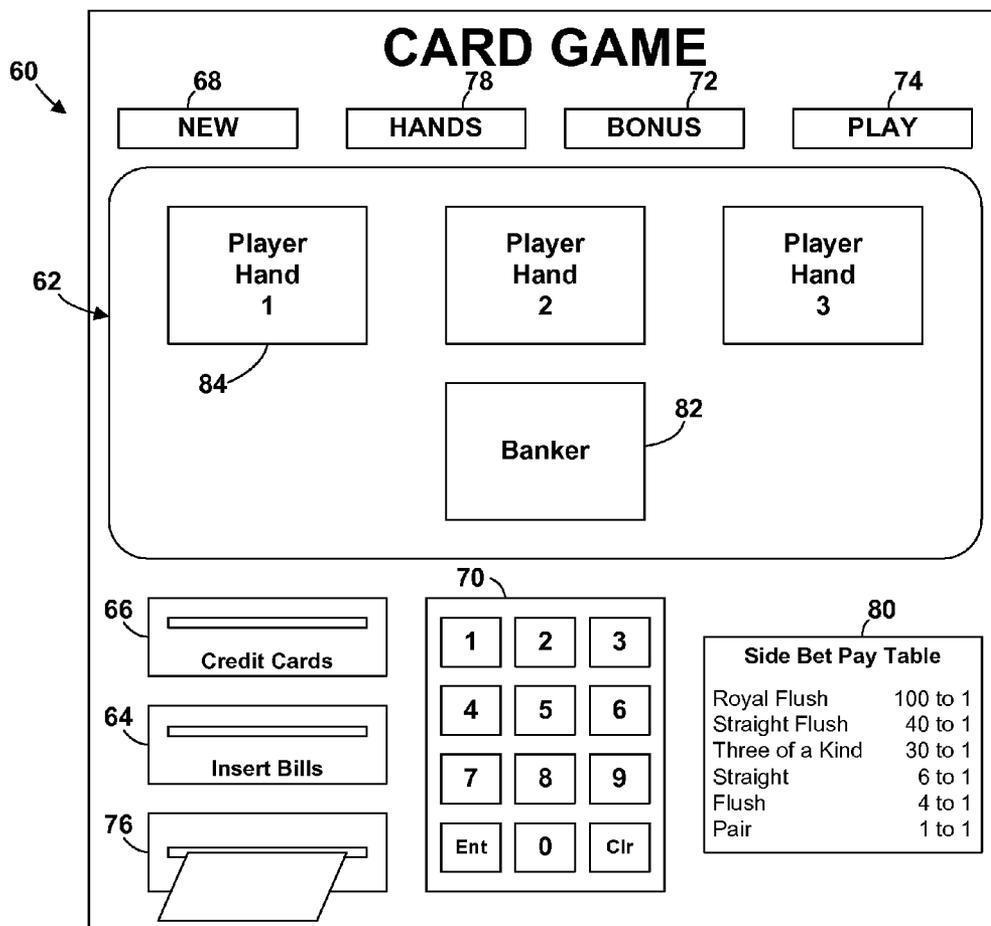


FIG. 6

US 7,451,987 B1

1

**METHOD OF PLAYING A BONUS WAGER**

CROSS-REFERENCES TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

The present application is a continuation application of application Ser. No. 10/913,097, filed Aug. 6, 2004 for METHOD OF PLAYING A BONUS WAGER in the name of John Feola.

STATEMENT REGARDING FEDERALLY SPONSORED RESEARCH OR DEVELOPMENT

Not Applicable

REFERENCE TO A SEQUENCE LISTING, A TABLE, OR A COMPUTER PROGRAM LISTING COMPACT DISK APPENDIX

Not Applicable

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to games for gambling, more specifically, to a bonus wager on a game where a player can wager on the hand composed of the face up cards of several hands.

2. Description of the Related Art

Many casino table games offer bonus bets or jackpots where players may wager on occurrences that do not affect the outcome of the basic game. These types of bonus bets and jackpots are popular with players. An example of such a bonus bet is the game "21+3" disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,012,719. The game is a standard blackjack game where the player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on whether or not a three-card poker hand made of the player's first two cards and the dealer's face up card is of a certain rank. Another example of a bonus bet is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,402,147. The basic game is stud poker, where the player's hand is compared to the banker's hand. The player is also given the option of placing a bonus wager on the rank of the player's hand.

BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is an object of the present invention to provide an adjunct to a game for gambling that adds another way to wager on the game.

It is another object to provide a poker-like element to different types of games for gambling.

The present invention is a method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards where the game comprises the steps of affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager, dealing out the cards to each of a plurality of hands, forming a bonus hand from one card from more than one hand, and identifying the player as a winning player if the player placed the bonus wager and the bonus hand has a predetermined rank.

The present invention is a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a card from each of a group of hands of a base game. The base game can be one of any number of games including poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, and pai gow poker. "Card" refers to any representation of a playing card or playing tile, whether real or virtual. The bonus wager can take the form of a bonus bet or a jackpot.

2

The base game is played on a playing surface that has a central dealer position with a plurality of player hand locations and a banker hand location. The playing surface also has a number of player positions that each have a symbol corresponding to each player hand location and a location for a bonus wager. The player chooses player hands by placing a wager on the corresponding symbol. To participate in the bonus wager, the player places a wager on appropriate the bonus wager location. After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of player and banker hands. The bonus hand, composed of cards from the player hands, is compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the player placing a bonus wager is a winner and the amount of winnings. Typically, the bonus hand will be ranked as a poker hand, but any form of ranking may be used. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of cards from the player hands and the banker hand(s).

The present invention contemplates that the game may be played using other media, such as scratch or pull-tab tickets, video poker-type machines, personal computers, hand-held devices, slot machines, over an on-line computer network, or on another type of one-way or interactive gaming or entertainment equipment, such as keno-style or lottery-style equipment.

Other objects of the present invention will become apparent in light of the following drawings and detailed description of the invention.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

For a fuller understanding of the nature and object of the present invention, reference is made to the accompanying drawings, wherein:

FIG. 1 shows a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand incorporating a single bonus of the present invention;

FIG. 2 shows the table layout of FIG. 1 with a blackjack hand dealt;

FIG. 3 shows a table layout of a game with three player hands and one banker hand incorporating two bonuses of the present invention;

FIG. 4 shows the table layout of FIG. 3 with a blackjack hand dealt;

FIG. 5 shows a block diagram of a keno-style system implementing the basic game of the present invention; and

FIG. 6 shows a video screen implementing the game shown in FIG. 1.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is a bonus wager based on a bonus hand composed of a face up card from each hand of a group of hands of a base game. The base card game has a number of player hands where at least one card of each player hand and, optionally, the banker hand(s), is dealt face up. There are a number of such games in existence where the essence of the game, whether it based on poker, blackjack, baccarat, pai gow tiles, pai gow poker, or any other game, is that a player wagers on one or more of a group of hands that she hopes will beat a banker hand. Players do not control the hands, that is, no player hands are assigned to players. The dealer plays all of the hands according to rules that permit little or no discretion in how the hands are played. One such game for poker is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,839,731, Method and Apparatus for Playing a Casino Game. Another such game for blackjack is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/867,019, Method of Playing a Blackjack-type Casino Card Game.

## US 7,451,987 B1

3

Another such game for pai gow is disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/890,445, Method of Playing a Pai Gow-type Game.

The term “card” is used in the present application to indicate a playing card, a playing tile, or any facsimile thereof. For example, a card can be a paper playing card, a physical playing tile, an image of a card or tile on a video display, an image of a card or tile on a scratch ticket, etc. Any representation of a playing card or tile is contemplated. A “deck of cards” refers to one or more complete decks of playing cards or a set of pai gow tiles. A “hand” is the group of cards for a single position. When using playing cards, a hand consists of the cards placed at each player and banker position. When using tiles, a hand consists of the tiles placed at each player and banker position.

In general, there are several forms of bonus wagers. In the bonus bet, the bonus wager goes to the banker and any winnings are paid by the banker as a fixed multiple of the wagered amount. In a jackpot, the bonus wager goes into a pot and winnings are paid from the pot as a percentage of the pot and/or a fixed amount. If the jackpot falls below a predetermined minimum value, the banker may add to the pot to restore the minimum value. In a set jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot for each game is fixed, but the fixed amount may be adjusted periodically, for example, after the jackpot is won. If more than one player wins a set jackpot, each winner is paid a predetermined amount. In a progressive jackpot, the amount put into the jackpot increases for each game played during which the jackpot is not won. If more than one player wins a progressive jackpot, its value is divided equally among the winners. Optionally, the jackpots from more than one table may be linked together as a single jackpot.

Before game play begins, the house determines the rules with which the game will be played, including, for example, the base game, the number of player and banker hands, the number of bonus hands, the cards that are dealt face up, the cards used for the bonus hands, the rank of winning bonus hands, the type of bonus wager, and how winning bonus hands are paid.

The base game is played on a playing surface, typically a tabletop, although other playing surfaces are contemplated, as described below. Example playing surfaces **10**, **12** for a base game with which the bonus wager of the present invention is played are shown in FIGS. **1** and **3**. These playing surfaces **10**, **12** are merely examples and any other playing surface configuration that provides the functionality needed to play the base game and incorporate the bonus wager of the present invention is contemplated.

The central dealer position **20** has a plurality of player hand locations **22**, one for each player hand to be dealt. The dealer position **20** has a banker hand location **24** for the one banker hand. The symbols **26** at each player hand location **22** are the player hand identifiers, which are typically numerals running sequentially from “1”.

There are a number of player positions **30a-30f** (collectively, **30**) that typically are evenly spaced in a semicircle around the dealer position **20**. Each player position **30** includes a symbol **32** containing a player hand identifier **34** corresponding to each player hand location **22**. Typically, there are six player positions **30**, but because the number of players is not related to the number of player hands, the number of player positions **30** may vary. Each player position **30** also includes a bonus wager symbol. The example of FIG. **1** has a single bonus wager symbol **36** for one bonus and the example of FIG. **3** as two bonus wager symbols **42**, **44** for two bonuses.

4

To begin the game, each player chooses the player hand or hands that she thinks will beat the banker hand in the base game. The selections are made by placing the amount to be wagered on the corresponding player hand identifier symbol **32** of the player position **30**. The wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value, such as cash, chips, or credit vouchers. In the example of FIG. **2**, the player at the second player position **30b** (player **2**) has placed a \$5 chip **38** on each identifier symbol **32** for player hands **1** and **3**, wagering that player hands **1** and **3** will beat the dealer hand. In the example of FIG. **4**, the player at the third player position **30c** (player **3**) has placed a \$1 chip **46** on each identifier symbol **32** for player hands **2** and **3**, wagering that player hands **2** and **3** will beat the dealer hand.

To participate in the bonus wager of the present invention, the player places the amount to be wagered on the appropriate bonus wager location. The amount to wager may be decided by the player or may be a fixed amount determined by the banker, for example, \$1. If the player decides the amount of the wager, there will typically be a minimum and maximum permitted wager determined by the banker. As with the base game, the wagered amount is indicated by any marker or markers that acceptably signify value. In the example of FIG. **2**, player **2** has placed a \$1 chip **40** on the bonus wager symbol **36**, wagering that the bonus hand will be a winning hand. In the example of FIG. **4**, player **3** has placed a \$2 chip **48** on the first bonus wager symbol **42**, wagering that the first bonus hand will be a winning hand, and a \$5 chip **50** on the second bonus wager symbol **44**, wagering that the second bonus hand will be a winning hand.

After all wagers are placed, the dealer deals out the predetermined number of hands. In the two examples, the dealer deals out three player hands and a banker hand, placing them in the appropriate locations **22**, **24** of the dealer position **20**. Each hand is dealt the appropriate number of cards for the base game. For example, for five-card poker, five playing cards are dealt, for blackjack and baccarat, two playing cards are dealt, for pai gow tiles, four tiles are dealt, and for pai gow poker, seven playing cards are dealt.

The bonus hand of the present invention is composed of at least one card from each player hand. In the example of FIG. **2**, the bonus hand is composed of the face up cards from each player hand, which means that the bonus hand is a three-card hand composed of a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, and a 4 of hearts. In the example of FIG. **4**, the first three-card bonus hand is composed of the first-dealt cards from each player hand: an 8 of diamonds, an ace of spades, and an ace of hearts. The second three-card bonus hand is composed of the second-dealt cards from each player hand: a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, and a 4 of hearts. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of cards from fewer than all of the player hands.

Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of at least one card from each player hand and the banker hand(s). With this option, the bonus hand of the example of FIG. **2** is a four-card hand composed of a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, a 4 of hearts, and a 7 of diamonds. In the example of FIG. **4**, the first four-card bonus hand is composed of an 8 of diamonds, an ace of spades, an ace of hearts, and an 8 of clubs. The second four-card bonus hand is composed of a 5 of spades, a 3 of diamonds, a 4 of hearts, and a 7 of diamonds. Optionally, the bonus hand is composed of cards from fewer than all of the player and banker hand(s).

Optionally, the cards that compose the bonus hand are dealt face up, as in the example of FIG. **2**. When the bonus hand cards are dealt face up, the bonus wager of the present invention can be settled before continuing with the base game.

## US 7,451,987 B1

5

Generally, if the bonus hand cards are dealt face down, the base game is completed and the cards revealed before the bonus wager can be settled.

The bonus hand is compared to a table of ranked hands to determine whether the bonus hand is a winning hand and the player placing a bonus wager is a winner and the amount of winnings. When the base game uses playing cards, the bonus hand is preferably treated as a poker hand and the bonus hand is compared to a table of poker rankings. Table 1 is an example of such a table for a three-card poker hand. Note that the example hand of FIG. 2 is a straight, which is a winning hand according to Table 1.

TABLE 1

Hand	Bonus Bet Payout	Jackpot Payout
Royal Flush	100-1	100% of Jackpot
Straight Flush	40-1	25% of Jackpot
Three of a Kind	30-1	10% of Jackpot
Straight	6-1	\$10
Flush	4-1	\$5
Pair	1-1	\$1

The present invention contemplates that the bonus hand ranking may be determined by other conditions. One condition may be the sum of the values of the cards in the bonus hand. Table 2 is an example of such a table for a three-card hand.

TABLE 2

Bonus Hand Sum	Bonus Bet Payout
3	500-1
4-6	50-1
7-10	5-1
11-15	2-1
16-20	1-1

The players that played the bonus wager receive a predetermined amount of winnings that is determined by the rank of the bonus hand. The predetermined amount may be a multiple of the amount wagered, a percentage of a pot into which the bonus bet is placed, or a fixed amount. Tables 1 and 2 show examples of winning multiples under the "Bonus Bet Payout" column. For the example bonus hand of FIG. 2, player 2 wins \$6 under the poker rankings of Table 1 because player 2 wagered \$1 and the bonus hand is a straight, which pays 6-1. Under the sum rankings of Table 2, player 2 wins \$2, because player 2 wagered \$1 and the bonus hand has a sum of 12, which pays 2-1. Table 1 also shows an example of winning percentages under the "Jackpot Payout" column. Note that not all winnings are a percentage of the jackpot; some are fixed amounts. For the example bonus hand of FIG. 2, player 2 wins \$10, because the bonus hand is a straight.

The present invention contemplates that, rather than being played on a table surface with a live dealer, the game is played using other media, such as scratch or pull-tab tickets, video poker-type machines, personal computers, hand-held devices, slot machines, over an on-line computer network, or on another type of one-way or interactive gaming or entertainment equipment, such as keno-style or lottery-style equipment.

In a keno-style lottery system 90, a block diagram of which is shown in FIG. 5, a player typically makes her choice of player hands at a remote location 94 by marking a slip of paper with the player hands she wishes to wager on, whether

6

or not she wishes to play the bonus wager, and the wager amounts. She gives the slip to a clerk with the amount of the wager, who then scans the slip into a terminal 96 that sends the choices to a central location 92. Alternatively, choices can be made from keys on a keyboard, keys on a key grid, or by boxes on a touch screen grid. Alternatively, the player may request a "quick pick," where the input terminal 96 or central location 92 randomly chooses a hand or hands for the player. The player receives a receipt, such as a paper receipt, or other acknowledgement, such as an indication on a private terminal, indicating the hand or hands chosen for the game and if the bonus wager is played. As the game is being played, the hands are displayed on a video screen 98 or matrix of video screens visible to the players at the remote location 94 from information received from the central location 92.

With individual machines, an example of which is shown in FIG. 6, implementing the embodiment of FIG. 1, each player has her own terminal 60. An example is a video machine at a gaming establishment. The banker hand 82 and player hands 84 are displayed on the player's video screen 62. Prior to playing a game, the player inserts cash, a voucher, or a paper ticket, into a money reader 64 or swipes a credit card, debit card, or player card in a card reader 66. The player presses the NEW button 68 and indicates the amount to wager for the game, typically by entering an amount on the keypad 70. The player begins a game by pressing the HANDS button 78 and entering the player hands on which the player wishes to wager using the keypad 70 or a touch screen 62. If the player wishes to play the bonus wager, she presses the BONUS button 72 and indicates the amount to wager. The player presses the PLAY button 74 to deal the cards. If the player played the bonus wager, the rank of the bonus hand comprised of the face up cards of the player hands is compared to the table 80 of ranked hands for the bonus wager. If the bonus hand rank is in the table 80, the winning amount is credited to the player and may be printed on a voucher 76 for payment by a cashier or they may be paid in coins or other monetary tokens by the terminal itself. After the bonus wager is settled, the base game is completed and any winnings are paid out in the same fashion.

Alternatively, the standalone machine may be a personal computer, hand-held device, or mobile telephone. The standalone machine can be part of a wired or wireless network. Wagers can be made by debits to credit cards, debit cards, or other cash equivalent. Payouts can be made by crediting credit cards, debit cards, or other bank account, by dispatching gifts, or by any other method wherein the player is credited with the amount won.

Thus, it has been shown and described a bonus wager that satisfies the objects set forth above.

Since certain changes may be made in the present disclosure without departing from the scope of the present invention, it is intended that all matter described in the foregoing specification and shown in the accompanying drawings be interpreted as illustrative and not in a limiting sense.

I claim:

1. A method of playing a game with at least one deck of cards, said game comprising the steps of:

- affording a player the opportunity to place a bonus wager;
- dealing out said cards to each of a plurality of hands;
- forming a bonus hand from at least one of said cards from each of a subset of said plurality of hands;
- identifying said player as a winning player if said player placed said bonus wager and said bonus hand has a predetermined rank; and
- paying said winning player a payout.

US 7,451,987 B1

7

2. The method of claim 1 wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands.

4. The method of claim 3 wherein said bonus hand is formed from at least one card from each of said player hands.

5. The method of claim 3 wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein said hands are player hands and at least one banker hand.

7. The method of claim 6 wherein said bonus hand is formed from at least one card from each of said player hands and at least one card from each of said at least one banker hand.

8

8. The method of claim 6 wherein said bonus hand is formed from cards that are dealt face up.

9. The method of claim 1 wherein said bonus hand is a poker hand.

10. The method of claim 1 wherein said payout is a multiple of said bonus wager.

11. The method of claim 1 wherein said payout is paid by a banker.

12. The method of claim 1 wherein said bonus wager is placed in a pot and said payout is paid from said pot.

\* \* \* \* \*

## CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

This brief complies with the word-length limitation of Federal Circuit Rule 32(a). This brief contains 13,772 words, excluding the portions set forth in FRAP 32(f) and Federal Circuit Rule 32(b). This brief complies with the typeface requirements of Federal Rule of Appellate Procedure 32(a)(5) and the type style requirements of Federal Rule of Appellate Procedure 32(a)(6). The brief has been prepared in a proportionally spaced typeface using Microsoft® Word and 14-point Century type.

*/s/ Matthew J. Dowd*

Matthew J. Dowd  
Dowd Scheffel PLLC  
1717 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW  
Suite 1025  
Washington, D.C. 20006  
(202) 559-9175  
mdowd@dowdscheffel.com

*Counsel for Appellant New Vision  
Gaming & Development, Inc.*

Dated: June 30, 2020

## CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

I hereby certify that on this day, June 30, 2020, the foregoing was electronically filed and therefore served electronically via the court's ECF/CM system on all counsel of record.

*/s/ Matthew J. Dowd*

Matthew J. Dowd  
Dowd Scheffel PLLC  
1717 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW  
Suite 1025  
Washington, D.C. 20006  
(202) 559-9175  
mdowd@dowdscheffel.com

*Counsel for Appellant New Vision  
Gaming & Development, Inc.*

Dated: June 30, 2020